This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, SAN DIEGO
3 1822 00538 3153

Digitized by Google

LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA
SAN DIEGO

Digitized by Google

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, SAN DIEGO
3 1822 00538 3153

CENTRAL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
University of California, San Diego

DATE DUE

MAR 05 1991
MAR 20 1991
APR 12 1992
MAY 24 1991

CI 39

UCSD Libr.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The Boke of Saint Albans

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The Boke of Saint Albans

BY

DAME JULIANA BERNERS

CONTAINING

TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING,
AND COTE ARMOUR:

PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486

REPRODUCED IN FACSIMILE

With an Introduction by

WILLIAM BLADES

AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE AND TYPOGRAPHY OF WILLIAM CAXTON"

LONDON

ELLIOT STOCK, 62 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

1901

Digitized by Google

"Manhood I am, therefore I me delyght
To hunt and hawke, to nourish up and fede
The greyhounde to the course, the hawke to th' flight,
And to bestryde a good and lusty stede."

From Sir Thomas More's *Poems.*

Digitized by Google

Oversize
Z
241
B37
1901

Introduction.

SEVERAL independent printing preſſes were eſtabliſhed in England before the cloſe of the fifteenth century; and from them iſſued numerous books which are invaluable to all ſtudents of antiquity from the light they throw upon the ſocial habits and literary progreſs of our nation. Of theſe it may ſafely be ſaid that not one exceeds in intereſt that work of an unknown typographer, which is here preſented in facſimile, and which, from the town in which it was compiled, as well as printed, is known to all bibliographers as "The Book of St. Albans." This work has always been a favourite, partly becauſe our feelings are appealed to in favour of the writer who for centuries has taken rank as England's earlieſt poeteſs, and is ſtill, in all our Biographical Dictionaries, reckoned among "noble authors;" and partly becauſe we love myſteries, and a myſtery has always enſhrouded the nameleſs printer. The ſubjects, too, ſo curiouſly alliterative—Hawking, Hunting, and Heraldry, have an enticing and antique flavour about them, being juſt thoſe with which, at that period, every man claiming to be "gentle" was expected to be familiar; while ignorance of their laws and language was to confeſs himſelf a "churl."

Digitized by Google

As to the language and orthography of the book, it is a never-failing ſource of intereſt, being quite different from any other printed work of the fifteenth century, except the St. Albans' Chronicle from the ſame preſs. Among bibliographers it ranks as "*rariſſimus*," the known copies being ſo few that they might probably be counted on the fingers of one hand.

Looking at the book, then, all round, it will be a convenient plan to conſider theſe ſubjects ſeparately, and to treat the volume in its four aſpects of Authorſhip, Typography and Bibliography, Subject-matter, and Philology.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER I.

Authorship.

HISTORIANS and Biographers, together with Librarians and Bookfellers, have a natural antipathy to anonymous books; and, wherever they can, are willing to accept the ſmalleſt amount of evidence as proof of paternity. It ſaves much trouble and avoids numerous errors in cataloguing, when a recogniſed name can be aſſociated with an anonymous work. From this tendency a bad habit has ariſen of attributing to particular writers books concerning which the evidence of authorſhip is doubtful, if not altogether untruſtworthy.

In this very book we have a ſtriking inſtance of ſuch erroneous attribution. The three treatiſes, of which the book is made up, are quite diſtinct, and to a portion only of one of theſe is there any author's name attached. Yet that name, "Dam Julyans Barnes," altered by degrees to "Dame Juliana Berners," is now univerſally received as the name of the authoreſs of the whole volume. With even leſs ſhow of reaſon ſhe is credited with the authorſhip of a "Treatiſe on Fiſhing" for which there is not the ſhadow of evidence, that treatiſe having been added ten years later by Wynken de Worde, who, when reprinting the Book of St. Albans, thought that the ſubject of Fiſhing would complete the work as a Gentleman's Vade Mecum.

There are really four diſtinct tractates in the Book of St. Albans, although the two laſt being on Heraldry are generally counted as one.

Digitized by Google

The firſt is on Hawking; to this no name of the author is attached, but it has a prologue which no one acquainted with the other writings of the printer can doubt to be his. Of this we ſhall have more to ſay anon.

The ſecond tractate is on Hunting: it is ſpecially aſſociated with the name of Dame Juliana Berners, and will require a more extended elucidation than the others.

Here the evidence of authorſhip is as good as for moſt pieces of fifteenth-century production—a period at which literary rights did not exiſt, and when the ſcribe, if at all acquainted with the ſubject upon which the book he was copying treated, did not ſcruple to interpolate his own ideas, and that without any egotiſtical vanity, but merely from a feeling that all books being written for the good of men, and not from vanity in the author, it was a duty to improve them where poſſible. But as improvement moſtly meant the addition of ſomething on the ſame ſubject taken from another manuſcript, we have the conſtant occurrence of one MS. being a compilation of two or three others, and yet appearing under the name of the laſt compiler.

In this treatiſe on Hunting we have the expreſs ſtatement at the end of the twenty-fourth page—"Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes." This might certainly apply to the tranſcription only, but, when taken with Wynken de Worde's verſion, the probability is, that the lady compiled as well as wrote it. In the reprint by Wynken de Worde, only ten years later than the original, he varies the colophon thus:—"¶ Explicit dame Julyans Bernes doctryne in her boke of huntynge," the whole reprint ending "Enprynted at weſtmeſtre by Wynkyn the Worde the yere of thyncarnacōn of our lorde. M. CCCC. lxxxxvj." So that he, a contemporary, evidently believed her to be the authoreſs. Later authorities attributed the whole book to her pen, but as they were in poſſeſſion of no more evidence than we now are, and probably not ſo much, we ſhould attach no weight to ſuch ſtatements, which were founded ſimply on a vivid imagination.

Digitized by Google

But what is known of the lady who is admitted to have compiled the twenty-four pages on Hunting? Who was Dame Julians Barnes? Here, unleſs a ſentimental and inventive ſympathy be employed to throw an artificial light upon the darkneſs, we are in total ignorance. A biography of her has certainly been written, and all our Dictionaries and Encyclopædias devote a page or two to her hiſtory, which, in 1810, under Haſlewood's nurture, attained its full development. Even ſo far back as 1549, or nearly a century after her ſuppoſed death, the learned Bale, who wrote an account of all our Engliſh celebrities, allows his gallantry to bedeck her memory with garments fine. "Fœmina illuſtris!" he exclaims, "corporis et animi dotibus abundans ac forma elegantia ſpectabilis" (An illuſtrious lady! abundantly gifted, both in body and mind, and charming in the elegance of her mien). Conſidering that the name of the lady is the whole of the text upon which Bale had to build, this is by no means a bad ſpecimen of imaginative biography, and became a good foundation for future commentators. The ſtory, however, fared rather badly at firſt; for Holinſhed, in 1577, while echoing Bale very exactly, is made, by a curious error of the printer, who miſtook the letters *rn* for *m*, to call the authoreſs Julyan Be*m*es; while Baker in his Chronicles, too careleſs even to refer to the original text, adds another blunder to the ſtory, and, thinking that Julyan muſt be a man's name, dubs the authoreſs "a gentleman of excellent gifts, who wrote certain treatiſes of Hawking and Hunting."

Chauncy, in 1700 (Hiſtory of Hertfordſhire), reſtored her ſex to the lady, and then ſet to work upon making a family hiſtory for her. His firſt diſcovery was that, being a "Dame," ſhe was of noble blood. Finding alſo that the family name of Lord Berners was, in olden time, ſpelt occaſionally Barnes, he ſoon ſupplied a father for our authoreſs, in the perſon of Sir James Berners. And ſo the game of making hiſtory went on merrily up to the time of Joſeph Haſlewood, who, in 1810, reprinted Wynken de Worde's

Digitized by Google

edition of the Book of St. Albans, and ſupplied a full-blown biography of the authoreſs, giving particulars of her birth and education, the occupations of her youthful days, and a moſt impoſing pedigree. Let us quote Haſlewood's own words: "Julyans, or Juliana, Barnes, otherwiſe Berners, who has been generally deſignated as the authoreſs of the preſent volume, is ſuppoſed to have been born, towards the latter end of the fourteenth century, at Roding-Berners, in the county of Eſſex. The received report is that ſhe was the daughter of Sir James Berners, whoſe ſon was created Baron Berners, temp. Henry IV., and that ſhe once held the ſituation of Prioreſs of Sopwell Nunnery, in Hertfordſhire." He then attributes to her the authorſhip of all four works in the Book of St. Albans. The difficulty of accounting for a lady ſo placed writing upon ſuch ſubjects, is cleverly, if not ſatisfactorily ſettled by aſſuming that ſhe paſſed her teens at court, partaking of the amuſements of the field, and writing for her own uſe a common-place book on various ſubjects. Then retiring through diſappointment (doubtleſs a love affair) to a cloiſter, her rank raiſed her to the poſition of prioreſs. There in her ſecluſion, writing amidſt the ſolitude of liſtleſs hours and vain regrets, ſhe verſified the general rules of ſport from her own pleaſant recollection, and from the diaries of her youthful happineſs, which fortunately ſhe had preſerved. If we remember the mania which ſeized all claſſes for diary-keeping at the beginning of this century, when Haſlewood wrote this, it will deepen our ſenſe of humour to note that he attributes private diary-keeping to a young lady who lived *ante* 1450.

But enough of ſuch ſham biography; let us return to facts.

The word "Dame" did not in the fifteenth century, as it does now, imply any connection with a titled family, it meant ſimply Miſtreſs or Mrs. Chaucer ſpeaks of Dame Partlet in this ſenſe; and had the Dame Julyans Barnes of the fifteenth century lived now, ſhe would have been juſt "Mrs. Barnes."

Similarity of name in hiſtory, like ſimilarity of ſound in philology.

Digitized by Google

is a will-o'-the-wiſp which has led many a writer into a bog. Allowing that Lord Berners' name was ſometimes ſpelt Barnes, is that ſufficient reaſon for making our authoreſs a member of his family? I think not.

That the greater portion of the book on Hunting was compiled by Miſtreſs Barnes, is probably correct,* and had ſhe written much more, and produced even an original work on the ſubject, ſhe would not have ſtood alone, even at that early period, as an authoreſs. Cryſtine de Piſan, two of whoſe works were printed by Caxton, was contemporary with Julians Barnes, and left not only numerous original writings behind her—one of which was upon the Art of War—but left her mark, and that no mean nor ignoble one, upon the political courſe and moral development of her countrymen. But Dame Julyans' work upon Hunting is certainly not original, as indeed very few works upon any ſubject were at that period. This is evident from a glance at the text and the grouping of the ſubjects. It begins with diſtinguiſhing the varieties of beaſts and their ages; the proper names by which to deſignate the beaſts, ſingly and together; on hunting and dreſſing a Roe, a Boar, a Hare; of flaying; of the horns of a Roebuck; of the Hart; of the ſeasons; of the Hare. Then follows, from another ſource, an interpolation of a diſcourſe between a Maſter of the Hunt and his man, going over portions of the ſame ground again; and this ended, we get back again to the original MS. and the diſmemberment of various beaſts. All through, with the exception of the interpolated converſation, the text is addreſſed to "My deare childe." Thus we read—"Do ſo, my child;" "Think what I ſay, my ſon;" "My lief childer;" "Say, child, where you go? my dame taught you ſo." Evidently that portion was originally written for a mother to uſe

* Taking Berners and Barnes to be the ſame word, it is curious to note—in connection with the work attributed to Dame Juliana, viz., The Book of Hunting—that the maſters of that ſport employed men called *Berners*, to be ready with relays of horſes and to feed the hounds.—*See* Halliwell's "Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words."

Digitized by Google

as a ſchool-book, by which her ſon would learn to read, and, at the ſame time, become familiar with the terms of venery.

In the Bodleian Library is a ſmall manuſcript on the Terms of the Chaſe, the beginning of which is:—

> "Mi dere ſones, where ye fare, be frith or by fell,
> Take good hede in his tyme how Triſtram wol tell."

This manuſcript was probably copied by ſome youth as a ſchool-exerciſe, which would account for the following odd colophon—"Explicit, expliceat, ludere ſcriptor eat."

Compare the above with the opening ſtanza of the verſes we attribute to Miſtreſs Barnes:—

> "Whereſoever ye fare, by frith or by fell,*
> My dear child, take heed how Triſtram doth you tell." †

The reſt of the Oxford MS. is in ſimilar accord with the print, but nowhere in it is there a word about Miſtreſs Barnes.

The words "Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes" have been conſidered to prove that the lady was alive when the book was printed. If, however, Sir James Berners were her father, of which there is no evidence, ſhe muſt have been cloſe upon a hundred years old in 1486, as he died in 1390. But this is importing a needleſs difficulty into the theory, which is not rendered more probable by making the authoreſs and printer contemporary.

It may here be as well to ſay a few words about Sopwell Nunnery, over which, without a particle of evidence, our authoreſs is ſuppoſed to have preſided. Sopwell Nunnery, Hertfordſhire, was founded about 1140, under the rule of St. Benedict, and ſubject to the Abbot of St. Albans, from which it was not far

* "By frith or by fell" = by foreſt or by plain; but ſee Halliwell's Dictionary.

† Sir Triſtram, the well-known knight of the Round Table, was a mighty hunter, and the great authority upon all ſubjects connected with the chaſe. Popular belief attributed to him the origin of all the ſpecial terms uſed in hunting, and his name was invoked to give authority to any ſtatement upon this ſubject, juſt as in a later century the arithmetical rules of Cocker give riſe to the popular phraſe—"According to Cocker."

Digitized by Google

diſtant. The rule of life among the inmates was very ſevere, and at the firſt the nuns were encloſed under locks and bolts, made additionally ſure by the ſeal, on the door, of the Abbot for the time being (Chauncy's Hiſtory, p. 466). How long this laſted, and how the nuns liked it, hiſtory ſaith not; but, in 1338, a re-organiſation had become imperative, and the Abbot of St. Albans, among other inſtructions, ordered that no nun ſhould lodge out of the houſe, and no gueſt within it (Newcome, p. 468). There does not ſeem much ſcope left here for the Prioreſs to take an active part in field ſports, though a hundred and fifty years later, which was about the period of our "Dame," many relaxations of the ſtrict rules may have become common. But, then, we have apparently accurate liſts of all the Prioreſſes of Sopwell in the fifteenth century, and the name of Juliana Barnes does not appear at all in them. The known dates are these:—In 1416, Matilda de Flamſtede was Prioreſs. Four years before her death, which was in 1430, ſhe was ſucceeded by Letitia Wyttenham. The next whose name is known was Joan Chapell; the date of her appointment is not recorded, but as ſhe was ſet aſide in 1480 on account of her age, ſhe had probably occupied the poſition for many years. In 1480, Elizabeth Webb ſucceeded Joan Chapell.

What is really known of the Dame is almoſt nothing, and may be ſummed up in the following few words. She probably lived at the beginning of the fifteenth century, and ſhe poſſibly compiled from exiſting MSS. ſome rhymes on Hunting.

There is ſtill the authorſhip of the other parts of the book to determine, and if ſimilarity of wording and phraſeology may be taken as evidence, they were all from one pen.

At the end of the book on Heraldry the printer has put the following—"Here endeth the book of Blaſing of Arms tranſlated and compiled together at Seynt Albons." Here we have the printer's own ſtatement as to the origin of his text, and doubtleſs this, as well as the treatiſe on Hawking, were made up or "compiled" from more

Digitized by Google

than one manuſcript in French. Haſlewood gives a liſt of ſuch as are in the Britiſh Muſeum, in ſeveral of which portions of the printed work are contained. Works on Hunting and Hawking were not uncommon in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and are ſtill found in all large collections of manuſcripts. There were ſeveral in the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy in the fifteenth century, and many are ſtill extant in the national collections of England and France.

The other tractates in the volume have an origin very ſimilar to that of the Book of Hunting. The Book of Hawking is an evident compilation from ſeveral manuſcripts, which accounts perhaps for its deficiency in arrangement and want of continuity. The Book of Coat Armour alſo has two diſtinct ſources in contemporary works, one of which was the "De Officio Militari" of Nicholas Upton. From this the ſchoolmaſter copied Book IV. almoſt word for word, ſupplementing it from "The Book of the Lineage of Coat Armour," as ſtated already. The only other literary work which can be attributed to our printer is the extenſive compilation known as the St. Albans' Chronicle or the Fructus Temporum. But neither in the Chronicle, where he ſimply combined two hiſtories into one, nor in the Book of St. Albans, which is alſo a compilation, does the ſchoolmaſter ſhow any literary ability above the average of ſcholars of his period.

As ſpecimens of the ſchoolmaſter's powers of compoſition we annex the following, the originals of which can be ſeen in the enſuing facſimile pages:—

Prologue to the Book of Hawking.

"In ſo much that gentlemen and honeſt perſons have great delight in Hawking, and deſire to have the manner to take hawks: and alſo how and in what wiſe they ſhould guide them ordinately: and to know the gentle terms in communing of their hawks: and to underſtand their ſickneſſes and infirmities, and to know medicines for them according, and the many notable terms that be uſed in hawking

Digitized by Google

both of their hawks and of the fowls that their hawks ſhall ſlay. Therefore this book following in a due form ſhows very knowledge of ſuch pleaſure to gentlemen and perſons diſpoſed to ſee it."

Prologue to Mistress Barnes' Compilation on Hunting.

"Likewiſe, as in the Book of Hawking aforeſaid are written and noted the terms of pleaſure belonging to gentlemen having delight therein, in the ſame manner this book following ſhoweth to ſuch gentle perſons the manner of Hunting for all manner of beaſts, whether they be beaſts of Venery, or of Chace, or Rascal. And alſo it ſhoweth all the terms convenient as well to the hounds as to the beaſts aforeſaid. And in certain there be many diverſe of them as it is declared in the book following."

Prologue to the Book of Coat Armour.

"Here in this book following is determined the lineage of Coat Armours: and how gentlemen ſhall be known from ungentle men, and how bondage began firſt in angel and after ſucceeded in man kind, as it is here ſhowed in proceſs, both in the childer of Adam and alſo of Noe, and how Noe divided the world in three parts to his three ſons. Alſo there be ſhowed the nine colours in Arms figured by the nine orders of Angels, and it is ſhowed by the foreſaid colours which be worthy and which be royal; and of regalities which be noble and which be excellent. And there be here the vertues of Chivalry, and many other notable and famous things, to the pleaſure of noble perſons ſhall be ſhowed, as the works following witneſſes, whoſoever liketh to ſee them and read them, which were too long now to rehearſe. And after theſe notable things aforeſaid followeth the Blaſing of all manner Arms in Latin, French, and Engliſh."

So wrote the ſchoolmaſter. Let us now ſee what kind of book this is typographically.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

Typography and Bibliography.

OLD books muſt be loved, and their idioſyncraſies carefully ſtudied, before they will yield up *all* their treaſures; that done, the obſervant lover will obtain poſſeſſion of both ſoul and body; he may revel in the intellectual feaſt provided by the author, or he may ſtudy the material and mechanical features of the books as repreſented by the peculiarities of paper and the habits and cuſtoms of the various printers. Then, by grouping theſe as a botaniſt does his flowers, according to their organiſation into claſſes, orders, genera, and ſpecies, he may extract from his volumes true replies to queſtions which otherwiſe would remain hidden for ever. So true is the dictum, "The Mind it is which ſees, and not the Eye alone."

Many bibliophiles, however, of education and taſte have been poſitively blind when outſide the circle of their own particular ſtudies. So it was with the Rev. Dr. M'Neille, a well-known critic and book-collector of ſixty years ago. When addreſſing Dr. Dibdin he wrote thus of "The Book of St. Albans"—"This book is itſelf uſeleſs, and only a *bon morceau* for the quizzical collector." With ſuch feelings towards one of the moſt curious works which this country produced during the infancy of the printing preſs, it was ſimply impoſſible that the intereſt of its pages ſhould be revealed to him; and however rich in divinity and *editiones principes* of the claſſics the library of the

Digitized by Google

worthy doctor may have been, it is evident that our Book of St. Albans could never have been aught but an alien on *his* book-shelves.

The works printed by William Caxton were almost without exception in the English tongue, while the contemporary presses of Oxford, St. Albans, and Machlinia were nearly all in Latin. Of the eight books at present known to have been printed at St. Albans, the only two in English were the "Fructus Temporum" and the work under review. The "Fructus" or St. Albans' Chronicle is the same as that printed two years previously by Caxton, with the addition of certain ecclesiastical events and Papal chronology, probably added by the printer himself to please the monks.

The Book of St. Albans' and the St. Albans' Chronicle make a class of themselves; but as it is impossible to understand their position without a glance at the other works from the same press, we will give a tabulated description of the whole eight.

BOOKS PRINTED AT ST. ALBANS IN FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

	Title of Book.	Language.	Size.	Date of Printing.	No. of Printed Leaves.	Type	Size of Printed Page.	Signatures.	Printed Initials.	Ink.	Device.	Woodcuts.	Lines in Page.
1	Augustini Dacti elegancie	Latin	4to	n. d.	18	1	$5\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	none	none	black	none	none	36
2	Laur: de Saona Rhetorica nova	Latin	4to	1480	81	2–1	$5\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	24
3	Alberti queſt. de modo Signiſicandi.	Latin	4to	1480	46	3–1	$5\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
4	Joan: Canonici Queſt. ſup. Phys. Ariſt.	Latin	fol.	1481	174	3	8 × 5	signed	none	black	none	none	44
5	Exempla ſacre ſcripture	Latin	4to	1481	83	3	$5\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
6	Ant. Andreæ ſuper Logica Ariſtotelis	Latin	4to	1482	335	3	$5\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
7	Chronicles of England	Engl.	fol.	1483?	295	2	8 × 5	every leaf signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32
8	The Book of St. Albans	Engl.	fol.	1486	88	2–4	8 × 5	signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32

But who was the printer? What was his name? Was he associated with the great Abbey? and is there any internal or external evidence in his works to connect him with any other printer or any other town?

The only notice we have of the printer is an accidental one by Wynken de Worde, who, in reprinting the St. Albans' Chronicle, says

Digitized by Google

in the colophon, "Here endith this preſent Chronicle . . . compiled in a book and alſo enprinted by our ſometime Schoolmaſter of St. Alban." He was a ſchoolmaſter, then, and this will account for the nature of his early works, all ſcholaſtic and all in Latin. Not till the end of his typographical career did he realiſe the fact that the printing-preſs, inſtead of being the hobby of a few learned men, was the educator of the people, the whole nation; and then he gave his countrymen what they wanted—a hiſtory of their own country and a book upon the whole (secular) duty of the gentleman, as then underſtood.

The name of the ſchoolmaſter-printer is quite unknown. No notice of him is found in the records of the Abbey, nor does he appear in any contemporary document. Yet here, as in Miſtreſs Barnes's caſe, imagination has come to the reſcue and a legendary name has been provided.

Finding that the Prologue to the Book of Hawking began with the words, "*Inſomuch* as gentle men and honeſt perſons have great delight in Hawking;" finding alſo that the St. Alban's Chronicle from the ſame preſs began thus: "*Inſomuch* as it is neceſſary;" and bearing in mind that certain old authors had veiled *their* names in the firſt words of their works, Dr. Chauncy arrived at the ſagacious concluſion that the St. Albans printer wiſhed to veil *his* name, which really was "Inſomuch." The joke, for it almoſt ſeems like one, does not bear even the ſcrutiny which itſelf invites, for although the ſchoolmaſter uſes the words in two other places, in neither caſe are they at the beginning of a chapter.* It ſhould be added that in this the worthy hiſtorian of Hertfordſhire only followed the lead of both Bale and Pits.

Was he connected with the Abbey? I think not. There is not a word to ſuggeſt ſuch a connection, although we may take it for granted that the Abbot and his fraternity could not have frowned upon

* On sig. a j recto of "Cote Armour" is "Inſomuch as all gentleneſs comes of God;" and upon sig. b iij verſo is "Inſomuch that in the fifth quadrat," &c. The uſe of the word in theſe caſes could have no veiled meaning, and it was probably only a peculiarity of diction which had become a habit with the ſchoolmaſter.

Digitized by Google

the printer, or he would never have eſtabliſhed himſelf. His imprints all mention the town of St. Albans, but never the Abbey, and his poſition was probably ſimilar to that of Caxton, who was ſimply a tenant of the Abbot of Weſtminſter, but, ſo far as is known, nothing more.

Was he connected with Caxton and the Weſtminſter preſs? Without a ſhadow of doubt I ſay, No! Mr. E. Scott, of the MS. department in the Britiſh Muſeum, has indeed ſtrung together a number of ſurmiſes to ſhow that the Schoolmaſter was employed by Caxton, and that all the books without date or place hitherto attributed to Weſtminſter were really printed at St. Albans. But internal evidence is againſt any ſuch gratuitous aſſumption. There is nothing in common between the two printers in any of their habits or cuſtoms except the poſſeſſion of Caxton's No. 3 type. This is the only one of Caxton's types uſed outſide his own office (for W. de Worde, his ſucceſſor in houſe and buſineſs, muſt not be regarded as a ſeparate printer). Caxton employed it from his arrival in England in 1477 till 1484, when it makes its laſt appearance in the headings of "Æſop," the "Order of Chivalry," and "The Golden Legend." In 1485 Caxton obtained a new fount, ſimilar in ſhape and character, and from that time the old No. 3 diſappears to make way for the new and ſmaller type No. 5. This being more ſuited to the taſte of the day, we find the larger and worn fount paſſing over to the country preſs of St. Albans, where the Schoolmaſter firſt uſes it in 1486, being the identical year in which its ſucceſſor appears in Caxton's "Royal Book." We may here obſerve that after the ſtoppage of the St. Albans' Preſs the ſame fount finds its way back again and is ſeen in W. de Worde's reprint, in 1496–97, of the two Engliſh St. Albans books. But the diſcovery of a copy of Caxton's Boethius in the old Grammar School at St. Albans, and the numerous fragments of old books extracted from its covers, are quoted as confirming the idea. Yet the book itſelf and all theſe fragments were from Weſtminſter, not a ſingle one being from a known St. Albans book, and they included the Caxton "Chronicles," 1480, the "Dictes," 1477, and the

Digitized by Google

ſtill earlier "Life of Jaſon;" ſo that we had better at once remove the whole Weſtminſter preſs, dated and undated, to St. Albans, if ſuch an argument is to have any force. Theſe fragments, indeed, can only point to the fact that the copy of Boethius was bound in the printing office, as was commonly the caſe with the books from Caxton's preſs.

Again, Mr. Scott draws attention to the fact that a page of the St. Albans' Book, 1486, has been copied by a contemporary writer on to the blank leaves of one of Caxton's earlieſt books. 'Tis true; but this copying of part of one book into another, printed ten years before, has no typographical bearing whatever. Laſtly, the name Cauſton appears in an old St. Albans' Regiſter of the early part of the fifteenth century. But this, again, means poſitively nothing. Caxton's name was not at all uncommon; there were Cauſtons or Caxtons in nearly every Engliſh county, and I have quite a long liſt of them.

It is highly probable that Caxton, while at Weſtminſter, in the van of all the literature of his day, would have communications of ſome ſort with the important town of St. Albans; but that the two printers aſſiſted one another in the production of books, is, ſo far as any evidence goes, a pure fiction.

Let us now glance at the bibliographical aſpect of the book.

The work itſelf has no title. It is difficult in our time, accuſtomed as we are to "teeming millions" of books, each with its own title-page, to conceive a period when the preſs ſent out works without even the ſhadow of a title-page. Before the invention of printing, the author ſimply headed his firſt page with the name of the work, as "Here begins the Confeſſio Amantis," or "Hic incipit Parvus Catho," and, without preface or more ado, the text commenced. Sometimes even this little notification was omitted, and, as in Caxton's "Jaſon," "The Cheſs Book," "Tulle," and many other fifteenth-century books, the ſubject of the work had to be learned by reading the text. So it is with the book now under review; it compriſes four diſtinct works, but to one only is there any heading, and that has the bare line "Incipit liber armorum"

Digitized by Google

The firſt, "The Book of Hawking," ſtarts ſtraight off—"This is the manner to keep Hawks," and occupies three ſignatures, a, b, and c, of eight leaves each, and ſig. d, which has but four leaves, on purpoſe that this portion might be complete alone, if ſo deſired. The ſame idea controlled the arrangement of "The Book of Hunting," which, beginning on ſig. e j, ends with Dame Juliana's "Explicit" on the recto of ſig. f iiij. This left the laſt ſeven pages of the quaternion to be filled up. Now it was a common practice, both with the ſcribes and with the early printers, when they got to the end of their text and found that a page or two of blank paper was left, to occupy the blank pages with ſuch common houſehold aphoriſms or popular rhymes as came eaſily to the memory, or were at hand in ſome other book. So here the ſchoolmaster-printer fills up his vacant pages with a number of odd ſentences and rhymes, moſt of which occur over and over again in numerous manuſcripts of early poetry. Among others we notice the well-known :—

"Ariſe erly,
ſerue God deuouteli,
and the world beſily."
&c. &c.

Alſo the folks proverb :—

"Too wyues in oon hous,
Too cattys and oon mous,
Too dogges and oon boon,
Theis ſhall neū accorde oon."

Then the liſt of proper terms to be uſed by gentlemen and thoſe curious in their ſpeech is of very common occurrence :—

"An herde of Hertis
An herde of all mañ dere
A pride of Lionys
A ſleuth of Beeris."
&c. &c.

This was evidently copied from ſome MS., and ends with "¶ Explicit," and nothing more. On the next page we have the proper terms for carving or dismembering beaſts, fowls, and fiſhes, followed on the laſt leaf by a liſt of biſhoprics and provinces.

Digitized by Google

Having thus filled up all his leaves, the printer begins his third ſubject on a freſh ſignature, and introduces the "Liber Armorum" with the Preface (already printed). A long work on the "Blaſing of Arms" follows, beginning on ſig. **t j**, and ending on ſig. **f** 10.

This is extremely intereſting, both in matter and in the very rude woodcut repreſentations of armorial bearings with which the text is profuſely illuſtrated. Except in one or two caſes of uncommon tints, theſe are all colour-printed, as are the initials to paragraphs. In the Grenville copy, the preſſman having forgotten to roll the "forme," the initials all appear in that ſemi-tinted ſtate which would be the natural reſult of ſuch an omiſſion. We notice, too, that where the coats of arms require, say, three colours on one page, then the initials are alſo in three colours; but if only one colour is required for the arms, only one colour, and that the ſame, is uſed for the initials. Occaſionally, where a peculiar colour was neceſſary, a bruſh was uſed to inſert that tint by hand.

In workmanſhip the St. Albans printer, eſpecially in the Engliſh books, is much inferior to the contemporary iſſue from the Weſtminſter preſs. The types are worſe, the arrangement worſe, the preſſwork worſe, and the ink worſe. From this point of view alone, the theory that he would print for Caxton ſo much better than he did for himſelf, is not worth ſerious conſideration.

The Book of St. Albans went through many editions, particulars of which are difficult to obtain.

1486. The Boke of St. Albans (Brit. Mus.).
149–. By Wynken de Worde "at the ſygne of the Sonne."
1496. By Wynken de Worde (Brit. Mus.).
15—. By W. Powell. "Imprinted at London in Fleteſtrete at the ſygne of George next to ſaynt Dunſton's Church by Wyllyam Powell.
15–-. By W. Copland. "Imprinted at London in Flete Street at the ſygne of the Roſe Garlande by Wylliam Copland for Richard Tottell" (Brit. Mus.).
15—. By W. Copland. "In Lothebury" 4to.
15—. By W. Copland. "In ſaynt Martyns pariſh in the Vinetre upon the three crane wharfe."
1548? By W. Copland. "Imprynted at London in the Vyentre vppon the thre Craned Wharfe by Wyllyam Copland."
1550. By W. Powell. "Hawkynge Huntynge and Fiſhynge." 8vo. London.
1551? By Abraham Vele.

Digitized by Google

15—. By Henry Tab. "Imprynted at London in Paul's chyrch yarde by me Hēry Tab" (Brit. Mus.).

15—. By J. Waley. "Imprinted at London in Foſter laen by Johñ Waley" 4to.

1561. By Copland. In this year Copland was fined for "a book of Hawkyng, Huntyng, and fyſhynge cōtrary to the orders of this howse—iiij d" (Herbert, p. 367).

1586. By E. Alde. 4to. (Bib. Dec.).

1590. By John Wolfe "at the ſygne of the Gunne."

1595. By H. Lownes. "The Gentleman's Academie or the Booke of St. Albans *** Compiled by Juliana Barnes in the year from the incarnation of Chriſt 1486. And now reduced into a better method by G. M. (Gervaſe Markham). London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).

1596. By Wolffe.

1596. By Iſlip. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fiſhing," by Adam Iſllip. 4to.

1596. By E. Alde. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fiſhing," by Edward Alde.

1600. By Wolffe.

1606. By Wolffe.

1614. By Helme. "A Jewell for Gentrie by S. T." 4to. (Brit. Mus.).

1793. "The Book of Cote Armour." London, 4to, reprinted by J. Dallaway, with an excellent introduction (Brit. Mus.).

1810. The Boke of Hawking Hunting and Cote Armour. Hazlewood's reprint. London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).

How did the ſchoolmaſter at St. Albans obtain his types? This is a puzzling queſtion in the preſent ſtate of palæotypography. Mr. Bradſhaw of Cambridge has, by unwearied ſtudy of early printed books, thrown great light upon the connection and genealogy of numerous founts uſed by fifteenth-century printers, and ſyſtematic attention to the minute peculiarities of each printer is doubtleſs the only way in which thoſe old books can be forced to yield up their ſecrets; but the taſk is immenſe, and beyond the powers of any one man to complete. Some day, however, when the palæotypography of this country, as well as of the Continental preſſes, ſhall have received that full technical and philoſophical analyſis which time is ſure to bring, the more fortunate bibliographer of the future will be able with certainty to track the footſteps and operations of the early typefounders, and will be enabled to ſtate for certain to what extent Caxton and the St. Albans printer were their own typefounders, and to what extent and to whom they looked for outside help. As the caſe now ſtands, we can only confeſs our ignorance of where the St. Albans types came from.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III.

The Subjects Treated.

IN the rude civiliſation of the fifteenth century, a year's experience of which would ſend moſt of us to our graves, the mental occupation as well as the bodily recreation of our anceſtors was almoſt confined to hunting and hawking. "Fiſhing with an Angle" came in as a bad third, being too tame a purſuit for men who were no men if not men of war. Mimic war—war on the beaſts of the field and the fowls of the air—war which could be purſued in times of peace, and which yet required knowledge, patience, fortitude, and courage—this had great attractions, and we cannot wonder at the general popularity of theſe purſuits.

The firſt treatiſe in the following reprint is upon Hawking, a paſtime eſſentially ariſtocratic from the great expenſe it entailed in the purchaſe, breeding, and maintenance of the birds. This, indeed, coupled with the diminution of game conſequent on the progreſs of civiliſation and the increaſe of the population, led to the gradual decadence of the ſport, and nearly to its extinction in the eighteenth century, although, in very rare caſes, falconry is even now practiſed.

As we have ſeen, one of the moſt difficult objects in hawking was to obtain an eaſy command of the proper vocabulary, and ſo at firſt ſtart our author inſtructs us in "The manner to ſpeak of Hawks, from the egg." We muſt not ſay a young hawk is hatched, but

Digitized by Google

"diſclofed;" they do not breed but "eyer;" it was a want of culture in any falconer to ſay that hawks were building their neſt, they "timbered" it. When the young could firſt leave the neſt they were "Boweſſes," and when they could fly they were "Branchers," and then was the time to catch and train them.

When the young were caught, which was with nets, the firſt thing was to "enſile" them, that is, to "take a needle and thread and ſew up the eyelids," ſo that they "ſee never a dele." After a night and a day the threads were cut ſoftly for fear of breaking the "lyddis of the ighen," then they were fed with well-waſhed fleſh, but kept awake the next night and day, after which they were ſuppoſed to be tame, or "reclaimed."

The various diſeaſes to which Hawks are liable are then explained, and medicines preſcribed for them. Some of theſe are very abſurd and ſome contradictory. Then comes a variety of terms for every movement and habit, for every limb or part of the body, and for almoſt every feather in the plumage. In this minute deſcription the author begins at the feet of the bird and ſo works upwards, as when "Knyghttis been harneſſide."

Next we are inſtructed how important it is to be careful of the manner of guiding the Hawk the firſt time it is ready to "nomme" a partridge; how to reward her by giving her the head and neck, after which on no account is ſhe to fly again till ſhe has "rejoiced," *i.e.*, ſharpened her beak and ſhaken her feathers. More medicines follow, among which is how to get rid of "lies" (lice). "Take a piece of rough blanket and hold it to the fire till it is quite hot; wrap the hawk therein, and without hurting hold her 'ſoftely and ſtylly' in your hands, and all the vermin will creep into the cloth." A happy thought this!

The "Geſſe," or ſtrip of leather by which the Hawk is held when carrying her on the hand, is next deſcribed, together with the creance or long line. More medicines ſtill, and then how to treat Hawks when "in mew," or moulting, a matter of great importance. To promote

Digitized by Google

"mewing" give the flesh of a kid, a young swan, and especially rats' flesh; stewed adders are also strongly recommended, or chickens which have been fed upon wheat soaked in broth of vipers.

Gout seems a common disease in various parts of the Hawk's body, which may be known by swelling and "ungladness;" also rheum and fever and blains and agrum, which last is cured by a red-hot silver needle thrust into the nostrils. Botches in the jaw should be "kutte with a knyfe." More terms follow for various habits and actions, the last paragraph being upon the variety of Bells used for Hawks. There should be two, one a "semytoyn" (semitone) below the other. "The Bells of Melen (Milan?) were the best, but," says the author, "there be now used Dutchland bells, of a town called durdright (Dordrecht), and they be passing good, sonowre (sonorous) of ringing in shrillness, and well lasting."

The whole ends with a list of various species of Hawks and their appropriateness to the various stations of life, among which are—

An Eagle for an Emperor.
A Gerfalcon for a King.
A Peregrine for an Earl.
A Merlyon for a Lady.
A Goshawk for a Yeoman.
A Sparehawk for a Priest.
A Muskyte for "an holiwater clerke."

The second treatise is upon Hunting, and has a short preface, which probably came, like the first, from the pen of the Schoolmaster.

The work is all in metre, and evidently intended for boys to learn by heart. It begins by telling "my dere chylde" the various kinds of beast to be hunted; the changes of name they take as they grow older; the variety of horns; how to skin and dismember; the various cries and noises to be used; the seasons of hunting various beasts.

Then follow instructions how to hunt the Hare, and what to say to the hounds, who must always be addressed in French, as "arere!" when he enters the kennel-door; "this is the first word, my son, of venery." "Sa sa cy auaunt," "Sweff mon amy sweff," and other similar cries are noted down, some to be shouted twice only and some thrice,

Digitized by Google

the chief cry being "So how." The knowledge of when and how often theſe cries ſhould be uſed was moſt important, as their proper uſe would bring "worſhip among all men." Here, apparently, in the midſt of one eſſay, another is interpolated, and we are treated to a portion of ſome old dialogue like "The Maſter of the Hunt," in which the "Man" aſks all ſorts of queſtions and the "Maſter" replies. It might indeed be dubbed "The Hunter's Catechiſm." This occupies eight pages, and then we fall back upon the original rhyme again and the inſtructions of the Dame to "my childe," ending with the "Explicit" of Dam Julyans Barnes. Some leaves remaining to be filled up, the moral and other ſentences, as already deſcribed at page 21, were added.

Perhaps the third treatiſe upon Coat Armour and the Blaſon of Arms is the moſt intereſting portion of the book. The quaintneſs of ſome of the explanations is very amuſing, and many people will find more points of ſympathy, both hiſtorical and technical, with this than with the others.

The headline, "Incipit Liber Armorum," gives us at once the title of the manuſcript from which the text was compiled. "Heraldry Run Mad" might indeed have been an appropriate title for this, as well as all ſimilar tractates; for the author, in his anxiety to honour the ſcience, does not ſcruple to take the reader back hiſtorically not to Noah only, but to Adam, whoſe ſpade, he tells us, was the firſt ſhield in Heraldry, and who was the firſt to bear Coat Armour. The argument, if it may ſo be called, is:—All "gentilnes" comes from God; there were originally in heaven ten Orders of Angels bearing Coat Armour, but now only nine, Lucifer with "mylionys of aungelis" having fallen out of heaven into hell and other places. As a bondman might ſay that all men come from Adam, ſo might Lucifer ſay he and his angels came from heaven.

Cain, for his wickedneſs, was the firſt churl, and all his offſpring were churls alſo by the curſe of God. Seth, on the other hand, was a gentleman by his father's bleſſing; Noah, too, was a gentleman by nature, but of his three ſons, "Sem, Cham, and Jafeth," Cham, for

Digitized by Google

his unfilial conduct, was made "ungentle." The addreſs of Noah to his three ſons is curious, and is thus ſupplemented :—

"Of the offſpring of the gentleman Japhet came Abraham, Moſes Aaron, and the prophets, and alſo the King of the right line of Mary, of whom that gentleman Jeſus was born, very God and man, after his manhood King of the land of Judah and of Jews, a gentleman by his mother Mary, and Prince of Coat Armour."

Some ſay that Coat Armour began at the ſiege of Troy, but it was of far greater antiquity than that, and was founded upon the nine Orders of Angels, who were crowned each with a diadem of precious ſtones—the Topaz (truth), Smaragdus (hardihood), Amethyſt (chivalry), Loys (powerful), Ruby (courageous), Sapphire (wiſdom), Diamond, a black ſtone (durable), Carbuncle (doughty and glorious). Theſe repreſent Gentleman, Squire, Knight, Baron, Lord, Earl, Marquis, Duke, and Prince. Here we probably have the origin of the ſhape of various crowns and coronets. Everything is treated in nines, and the nine virtues and nine vices of gentleneſs follow, with nine rejoicings, nine articles that every knight ſhould keep, and nine manner of gentlemen, in which we learn that the Evangeliſts and Apoſtles were all gentlemen of the right line of that worthy conqueror, Judas Machabeus, who in courſe of time had fallen to labour, and ſo were not called gentlemen. The four doctors of the Church—St. Jerome Ambroſe, Auguſtine, and Gregory—were alſo gentlemen of blood and of Coat Armour. There are nine differences of Coat Armour and nine quadrats, all of which are explained. The "Blaſyng of Arms" comes next, the preface to which is by the author, and not by the printer. It begins with the varieties of the Croſs as borne in arms, each being illuſtrated by a rude woodcut printed in its proper colours, and the blaſon, or technical deſcription of each is given in Latin, French, and Engliſh. All varieties of arms follow, with the myſteries of bends, engrail, borders, chequers, balls, cakes, rings, &c., offering but little which can be quoted, but forming an intereſting and uſeful book of reference.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IV.

Philology.

THERE is a ſtrongly marked individuality in the ſpelling throughout all the treatiſes in this work. If the Hunting rhymes belong to Dam Julyans, their orthography, like the proſe portions, is that of the Schoolmaſter, who appears to have been a North-countryman, many words leading to that concluſion. The formation of the plural by adding the letters "is" or "ys" ſtrikes the attention at once. Thus the plural of bells is bellis; egg, eggis; vetch, fetchis; fulmert, fulmertis; hawk, hawkys; herd, herdys; person, personys, and so on. The change of a *y* at the end of a word to an *i* is common, as onli, ſofteli, unthreſti; and for if; algate; awth for all the; bowke; chylder; clepit; clees; knaw; ken; yowre; and many others are Northern. As might be expected, many Anglo-Saxon and Anglo-Norman words now obſolete are found, ſuch as benymme, blynne, byzete, canell, clepit, colver, dagon, gobbit, kawe, kydde, liggen, merde, naſethrils, nym,* raton, and many others.

The following vocabulary will ſhow the chief words in which peculiarity of ſpelling or dialect are noticeable:—

alfe, half	*and*, used for "if"	*arn*, are
algate, always	*appillis*, apples	*aſſone*, as ſoon

* In the ſlang of thieves to *ſteal* is to *nim* at this day.

Digitized by Google

awntelere, antler
awth, aught
awth, all the
barris, bars
beeſtys, beaſts
beke, beak
bellis, bells
bene, be
benymme, take away
blynne, to ceaſe
boon, bone
bodi, body
bowellis, bowels
bott, but
bottre, butter
bowke, crooked
bridde, bird
broght, brought
byſprenged, ſprinkled
byzete, gain
calt, called
calde, called
cattis fleſh, cat's fleſh
canell, cinnamon
calliſh, call (imper.)
chycon, chick
chykynnes, chickens
chooce, choice
chylder, children
clepit, called
cloos, close
communeli, commonly
commythe, cometh
cowntenanſis, countenances
coluer, a dove
colode, cold
cogh, cough
contenyt, contained
cowples, couples
croampe, cramp
currage, courage
cum, *cumme*, come
dais, days
dagon, a piece
dayſes, daiſies
deeil, a portion
defawte, default
diueris, divers
dookes, ducks
doon, do
doys, does
echeon, each one
ech, each
eeg, egg
eegis, eggs
ellis, else
elis, eels
errabull, arable
eſeli, eaſily
eueri, every
eueroſe, roſewater
euyn, *eeuen*, even
eyre, air
eygh, *eyghen*, eye, eyes
febulneſs, feebleneſs
fechens, ſtoats
faukeneris, falconers
feederis, *federes*, feathers
fetchis, vetches
feldis, fields
foſterys, foreſters
folowys, follows
flee, flay
forder, further
forrgeet, forget
foſtewt, foſt
fowrith, fourth
fulmertis, polecats
gedder, gather
glayre, white of an egg
gobbit, piece
gres, greaſe
groyn, grown
gyde, guide
habull, able
hawkys, hawks
hawtyn, proud
hakke, hack
haare, hare
heepis, heeps
hedgis, hedges
herdys, herds
howndys, hounds
hoole, whole
hoold, *holde*, old
hoom, home
hudge, ſmall
huntid, hunted
hunterys, hunters
hennys, hens
huicles oppon hir houghis
hanylon, wiles of a fox

Digitized by Google

igh,ighe,iyen, eye, eyes
ingraylyt, engrailled
inowgh, enough
ilich, alike
iren, iron
ilke, each
juse, juice
kawe, call
ken, know
knaw, *knawe*, know
knottis, knots
kneys, knees
kow, cow
knyue, knife
kydde, known
kyndeli, natural
kut, cut
layſerly, leiſurely
lew warme
leppys, leaps
leif, dear
leuer, liver
lies, lice
linne, *lynne*, linen
littyl, little
liggyn, lie
luke water
lyddis of the ighen, eyelids
lymayall, iron filings
looff, loaf
maake, make
mary, marrow
markeris, markers
merde, dung
medecyne, *medeſyn*,
medlide, mingled
meele, *melis*, meal, meals
medill, mingle
moch, much
mony, many
mowothe, mouth
moyſtour, moiſture
myddes, midſt
mynne, mine
naſethrillis, noſtrils
nares, noſtrils
naamys, names
natheleſs, nevertheless
neppe, catmint
nettis, nets
notabull, notable
no moo, no more
nombur, number
not, a nut
nyghtis, nights
nym, *nomme*, take, taken
okys, oaks
onli, only
ony, honey
ones, *onys*, once
oouen, oven
oon, one
oppyn, open
ordenatili
owte, out
parlous, *perlous*, perilous
pennyd, feathered
perſonys, perſons
pellittis, pellets
pike, pick
proceis, proceſs
puttith, putteth
praty, pretty
properteis, properties
quarterit, quartered
rad, ? afraid
raton, a rat
reſtith, reſteth
rede, ready
rebuket, rebuked
roys, roes
roungeth
rowſe, rouſe
ſaauue, ſave
ſerven, ſew
ſemytoyn, ſemitone
ſe, ſee
ſhewys, ſhows
ſlau, ſlow
ſnakys, ſnakes
ſofteli, ſoftly
ſomwatt, ſomewhat
ſoore, ſore
ſowre, ſoar
ſoper, ſupper
ſowkyng, ſucking
ſonnys, ſons
ſpanyellis, ſpaniels
ſnakys, ſnakes
taake, take
takys, takes

Digitized by Google

tempur, temper
termys, *termis*, terms
tho, *thei*, they
thridde, third
theyem, them
threis, thrice
theys, thighs
togeyder, together
toon, two
tweys, twice
tymeli, timely
thredis, threads
varri rede, very red
veri, very
vnthrefti, unthrifty
vreyne, urine
warbellith, warbelleth
watt, what
weere, where
weere, weary
ware, were
wengys, wings
whaan, when
whote nat, wot not
wroght, wrought
wode, *wold*, would
wight, ſwift
woddys, woods
wylis, while
yche, each
yghes, eyes
yolow, yellow
yowre, your
yowris, yours

We have now traced the various aſpects in which this curious work may be viewed. There is not one of them that would not repay much deeper ſtudy, and the reader will, doubtleſs, ſympathiſe with the writer in the wiſh that more could be diſcovered concerning the ſchoolmaſter-printer. That his pioneer attempts to eſtabliſh a printing preſs met with many diſcouragements was a matter of courſe; and, doubtleſs, he had many technical, buſineſs, and even ſocial difficulties to overcome; for a reading public had to be created and patronage was ſcantily afforded. Nevertheleſs he ſtruggled on for at leaſt ſeven years, as we learn from the dates on his books, and whatever may have been his ſhortcomings, either as author or as printer, the fact of his having been one of the earlieſt promoters in this country of the grandeſt diſcovery which the mind of man has yet made, will unite all of us in honouring the memory and reſpecting the name, ſhadowy though it be, of the "Scole mayſter of St. Albon."

WILLIAM BLADES.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Tyll so moch that gentill men and honeste persones haue grete delite in haukyng and desire to haue the maner to take haukys: and also how and in what wyse they shulde gyde theym ordynately: and to knowe the gentill termys in communyng of theyr haukys: and to vnderstonde theyr seknesses and infirmytees: and also to knowe medicines for theym accordyng. and many notabull termys that ben vsed in haukyng both of their haukys and of the foules that their haukys shall sley. Therfore this book following in a dew forme shewys verily knowlege of suche pleasure to gentill men and persons disposed to se itt.

This is the maner to begynne to kepe haukys: but not all maner haukys. but onli Gosshawkys: and Tercellis of Gosshawkys. and Spare haukys. and in what maner thay shall be taake.

The maner to speke of hawkis fro an reg to thei be habull to be taken.

How to speke of haukys. first thay ben Eggges. and afterward they bene disclosed haukys. and communely gos haukys been disclosed. as sone as the chought and in some place more tymely after the contre is of hete. and tymely bredyng.

And he shall say that haukis doon Eyer. and not brede. in the Woodes. And he shall say that hawkys doon drawe when they bere tymbrang to their nestes. and nott they beld ne make her nestes And in the tyme of their loue they calle. and not kauke. And he shall say that they trede.

And when they bene vnclosed and begynneth to fedre any thyng of lengthe Anoon be kynde they will drawe somwhat out of the nest: and drawe to wolus. and come agayn to their nest

And they thay be clepit Bolbessis ¶ And after sayne Margaretis day thay will flie fro tree to tree. And then thay bene ralde Fralboncheris. And then it is time for to take hym
¶ And .vij. nightis before sayne Margaritis day ẽ. vij. nightis after is beste takyng of spare halkes.

How ye shall demeyn yow i takyng of hawkis & with wat instrumẽtis & how ye shall hide them

Who so will take halkes he must haue nettis which sensibled wraines and they must be made of good small threde. and it hade need to be died other green or blue for espueng of thee halke. and he moste take with hym needil and threde to ensile the halkes that ben taken. And in this maner they must be ensiled. Take the needil and threde: and put it thorolh the ouer igh lid and so of that other. and make hem fast vnder the beke: that she se neuer a deil and then she is ensiled as she aldithe to be. Sum vsen to ensile hem with the neder igh lide a bone the beke on the hede almoste: bot that is the worse way For of reson the ouer igh lide closith more iustly then the nether be cause of the largenesse. When she is ensiled then bere thi halke home on thi fiste and cast hir on a perch and let hir stande ther a night and a day and on that other day toward euen. then take and cut esely the threades and take hem a way softely for brekyng of the lydes of the ighen. Then softe and faire beginne to fede her. and fair fare with her till she will sitte stille vpon thy fist. For it is drede for hurtyng of hir wengys. And then thessame night after the

Digitized by Google

fedyng take hyr all nyght and the mowth all day. Then shal
bee veray Inough to be reclamed. And the first meete that
the shall eete: lett it be hoot. and yeue hyr Inough ther of

Whan yowre hawke may be draw to reclayme and the maner of hir dyette

And if yowre hawke be hard pennyd: she may be drawne
to be reclaymed For all the while that she is tender pen
nyd: she is not yabull to be reclaymed ¶ And if she be a Gos
hawke or Tercell that shall be reclaymed euer fede hym with wa
she meete at the drawyng. and at the reclaymyng. hot loke that
hit be hoote. and in this maner washe it. Take the meet and go
to the water and strike it vpp and downe in the water. and chan
ge the water ofte. and fede hir ther with and she is a brawn
cher. And if it bene an Eyesse thow most wash the meete clen
ner then ye doo to the brawnchez. and with a linne cloth dryge it
and fede hyr. And euermore the third day yeue hyr castyng when
she is fleyng if she be a Goshawke or Tercell in this maner:
Take nedo blanket cloth and cut. v. pelettis therof of an in;
the longe. And take the flesh and cutt. v. morcelis: and withe
a lenyues point make an hoole in euery morcell. and put therm
the pellettis of cloth. and take a fair dish with water and put
hem therin. Then take the hawke and yeue hyr a morcell of hoote
meete the mowntenawns of halfe hir hoop. Then take hit that
lyth in the water. and fede hyr for all nyght.

Digitized by Google

How ye shall fede yowre hawke and to knawe hir infirmiteis. & ther bene mony diueris of them

If yowre hawke be a sparre hawke: euer fede hir with wn wasshe meet and looke that hir casteyng be plumage: than looke that it be cleyn vnder the perch. and in the morwe ye shal fynde the casteyng vnder the perch. and ther ye shall knowe how ther the hawke be clene or noo. For sum gobbit with be yolow and sum greene. and sum glaymous. and sum cleere And if itt be yolow she engendreth the frounce. the wych is an euell that with riese in the mowthe or in the cheke. And if it be greene she engendreth the Ry. The condicion of this euell is this. it wil arise in the hede and make the hede to swell. & the yen all glaymous. and dyrke. and wot it haue helpe: it wall downe in to the legges. and maake the legges to vncle. and if it goo fro the legges in to the hede a gayne thi hawke is wot loose. And if it be glaymous and roping she engendreth an euell called the Cray. that is when an hawke may not muteyse

Merke wele yowre medicines here folowyng

A medicine for the frounce i the mowth

Take a siluer spoone and put the small ende in the fyre till it be wote. Then let holde the hawke and oppyn hir beke and bren

the ſoore and anoynte it with the mary of a gooſe that hathe lyne longe. and ſhe ſhalt be hoole. And if the frounce be wey as greete as a note. Than ther is a grubbe ther in. and then ſhold moſt cutt it with a Raſure in this maner. Fette hoolde the halbke: and ſlitte ther the ſoore is. and thenn ſhalte fynde ther as it ware the malbe of a peaeon. Take it oldte alt hoole. and take a payre of ſheeris and cutt the hole of the ſoore. and make it as fayre as ye may with a lynne cloth. and wipe clene the bloode a way. and anoynt the ſoore with halbme. iiij. dais arelbe and afterwarde with papylyen. tilt it be hoole.

Chow the frounce commythe.

The frounce commyth when a man fedith his halbke with ſhorke or cattiſſleſh. iiij. days to geydre

Chow the Ky commythe.

For defalbte of hoole meete this ſekeneſe the Ky commyth.

Chow the Cray commythe.

The Cray commyth of wach meete the wich is wach with hoole wates in the defalbte of hoole meete. Alſo it commythe

of threedis the Wich ben in the flesh that the halbke is fedde With For though thou pike the flesh neuer so clene. yit thou shalte fynde threedes therin.

Whan thyn hawke shall bathe hym.

And euermore ech thridde day let thyn halbke bathe hym. alle the somer if it be mete Wether. and anys in a Weke in Wynter if it be fayre Wether. and not ellis. And Whan thou bathes thy halbke: euer yeue hir a morcell of foote mete sondrash though she bene a Gosshalbke.

How ye may cawse yowre hawke to flye withe courage in the morow.

Iff ye Will that yolbre halbke flye in the mowlding. fede hir the nyght before With foote mete. and Wash thessame mete in Wayne and Wryng oute the Wates clene. and that shall make hir to haue lyst and curage to flie in the mowld in the best maner

How ye shall gyde yow if yowre hawke be full goorged and ye wode soone haue a flyght.

Iff yolbre halbke be full goorged. and that ye Wold soone ley

pon haue a flighte take. iij. cornes of whete. and put hem in a morcell of flesh: and yeue thessame morcell to the halke · and she will cast anoon all that she hath with hyr. and anoon after that she hath cast Looke ye haue a morcell of hoote meete to yeue hir ¶ And yf yolure halke be ouergoorged. yeue hyr thessame medesyn.

¶ A medecyne for the Ky

Take rayses leeuys. and stampe hem in a morter. and wryng ge owt the Juse. and with a penne put it in the halkis nares Ones or twyes whan the halke is smalle goorged. and a non after let hir tyre. and she shall be hoole as a fysh ¶ Or ellis take percelli Roots and serue hir with thyem in thessame maner. and whan she tyreth holde cold i yolure honde with the spring and that shall make hir hoide. but it is perlous to vse it often that the Juice fall nere sprynge in to hir yghes.

¶ Also and ye yeue yolure halke fresh butter or the marow of hogges that is in the bone of the butte of porke. it shall make hir to cast water bele at the nares. and it will kepe the nares opyn. but it will make hir halcyn and yvell

¶ A medecyne for the Cray ¶ mad wlowh

Take and chafe with yolure hondys the fundement of yolure

ſalbe with luke water a longe tyme. and after that take the powder of ſaxifrage or ellis the powder of Rede. and a quantite of may butter. and temper hit well to geder tyll thay ben euen medled. than putte it in a lityll toy and ſtoppe it faſte. & as often as you ſe your hors ſalbe any hole mete anoynt hire mete a lityll therwith. and that ſhall make hit to loue meet the better for loue of the oynement. and it ſhall ſaaue hir fro the Cray and from mony oder ſekeneſes: that gender of te man ſalbe.

¶ Alſo take the hoote hert of a ſwyne or of a pigge and fede her. ij. days therwith. and ſhe ſhall be hole.

¶ Alſo take porke and warte it in hoote mylke of a cowe. & fede the ſalbe therwith. and that ſhall make hir mulyſe all the beſt.

¶ Alſo porke with the mary of the woon of the but of porke ſhall make hir mutiſe & fede hir with wooll to geder.

¶ Alſo roſe hir to freſh butter and it will doo theſſame

¶ Alſo oon mele or. ij. at the moſt of the hoote leuer of a pig ſhall make hir to mulyſe weke. be ware ye yeue hir not to grete a goorge therof. for it is a perilous meete

¶ Alſo take ye white of an egge. & labur theſſame i a ſponge as weele as ye wolde make glayre for rede Inke tyll it be like wat. put theſſame i a veſſell. & let the meete y^t ſhall be for hir ſoy: ly a ſtepe therin all the day be for. & at night fede hir therw^t

and that the fych ſhall be for hir dynez in the moznyng let it ly all the nyght. but in any hyſe that ye haue allway freſſh glezze. and if hir ſedyng be wozke it is the bettiz. y' is proued

¶ The kyndeli termis that belong to haukis.

IN the begynnyng of kyndli ſpech of the termys that be long to haukys here ye may fynde theym ¶ The fyrſt is hyde faſt at all tymes. and ſpeaally whan ſhe batyth. It is alde batyng. for ſhe batyth with hir ſelfe moſt of tyn cauſeles ¶ The ſeaunde is rebate youre hawke: to yolde fyſt. & that is whan yolde hawke batyth. the leeſt meuyng that ye can make with yolde fyſt ſhe will rebate ayen vppon yolde fyſt ¶ The thrade is feede yolde hawke. and not gyue hir meete ¶ The falbrith is an hawke ſnytath. or ſelbrith hir beke and not wipith hir beke ¶ The .v. youre hauke Joukith. and not ſlepith ¶ The .vi. youre hawke prunyth. and not pikith and ſhe prunyth not but whan ſhe begynnyth at hir leggys. and ſek theth moyſtour like oyle. at hir taill. and baldmeth hir fete & ſt vkyth the federis of hir wynges thorow hir beke. and it is alde the note. than as ſhe fetchis the oyle. And ye ſhall vnderſtonde an hawke wolde not be letted of hir pruynyng. For that tyme that ſhe prunyth ſhe is lykyng and luſty. and whanne ſhe hathe done ſhe will wolde hize myghtyly.

And sam tyme yolowe yalowke countenansis as she piked hir. and yet she proynith not. and thyn ye most say she Reformith hir fedris and not pikeith hir federis. ¶ The. viij yolowe yalowke colyeth and not beckeyth ¶ The. viij. she wolsith and not shakith her selfe ¶ The. ix. she streynith and not Clithith nor Crat; chith ¶ The. x she mantellith and not stretchith when she puttith her leges from hir oon after an other: and hir wynges folowb after hier leggy. then she wooth mantill hir and when she hath mantilled hir and bryngith wooth her wynges to gedir ouer hir backe ye shall say yolowe yalowke warbellith hir wynges. and that is oon terme alowe therfore ¶ The. xi ye shall say yolowe yalowke muteſſith or mutith and not slalysich. ¶ The. xij ye shall say caſt yolowe yalowke to the perch. and not set your yalowke vppon the perch.

Here shal ye vnderstonde furthermore other maner of termys that belong vn to hawkis for to cō mende them for diuerse of theyr propirteis

Fyrst ye shall say This is a fayr yalowke. an hudge hauke a longe yalowke. a short thike yalowke. ꝯ say not this is a grete yalowke. also ye shall say this hauke has a large beke Or a short beke. and call it not bille. an hudge hede or a small he: de fayre seasoned ye shall say yolowe yalowke is full goorged and not cropped. and yolowe yalowke puttithouer and endueth. and yet she wooth wooth ouerselp.

Digitized by Google

¶ How yowre hawke puttithouer

An hawke puttithouer when she remeuith the mete from hir go orge in to hir bowellis . And thus ye shall knawe it When she puttithouer she trauersith with hir bodi . and speciall with the necke : as a Crane dothe or an other brade

¶ whan ye shall say enduth & embowellid

An hawke enduth neuer as long as hir bowellis bene fulle at her fedyng . but assone as she is fedde . and restith she enduthe litill and litill . And if her goorge be wide and the bowell any thyng stiffid . ye shall say she is embowellid and hath not fully endued and as long as ye may fele any thyng in hir bowellis it is perlous to gyue her any mete .

¶ Whethe well theys termys folowyng

Say an hawke hath a long lyng . a faire long tayll with vi barris oldt . and stondith vppon the . yn . This hawke is entirpen ned That is to say When the federis of the wynges bene betwen the body and the thighis . This hawke has an hudge legge or a flat leg . or a colonde legge . or a faire enserid legge

¶ To knawe the maill of an hawke

Hawkes haue white maill . Canuas maill or Rede maill . And som call Rede maill Iren mayll . White maill is soone knawe . Canuas maill is betwene white maill and Iron maill . And Iron maill is warm Rede .

Digitized by Google

¶ Plumage . and Caste ȳowre hawke.

¶ A Gosshawke nor a terselt in thare fore aage haue nott thare maples named . bot it is calde theiz plumage . and after the cote . it is calde theyz Maitt ¶ And if yolde hawke reward to any folde by countenance for to flee thez to ye shalt say caste the hawke thez to . and not lett flu thez to .

¶ Nomme or seesid .

¶ And if yolde hawke Nomme a folde . and the folde breke a way fro hir . she hath discomfet mony federes of the folde . and is brokyn a way for m kyndeli spech ye shalt say youre hawke hath Nomme or seesid a folde and not take it

¶ Werfore an hawke is calde a Riselere .

¶ And oft tyme it happith mony an hawke for egerneſſe when he shulde Nomme a folde he seesith bot the federis . and as ofte as he doos so he Rislith . thezfore such hawkys been called Riseleres if they doo ofte so .

How ye shall naame the membres of ȳowre hawkis in conuenient termes .

NOw ye shalt vnderstande the naamys off the membries of hawkys : to begynne at hiz fete and goo vpwarde as knyghtis been harneſſide and armeed . ¶ so he shalt naame hys

¶ Talons.

Herst the grete Clees behynde. that strenyth the bake of the. hande. ye shall calle hom Talons

¶ Pounces.

The Clees with i the sote ye shall calle of right her Pounces

¶ Longe Sengles.

Bott certaynly the Clees that are vppon the medyll stretche: as ye shall calle the loong Sengles.

¶ Pety Sengles.

Hndy the vttermest Clees ye shall calle the Pety Sengles

¶ The key or Closer.

Understond ye also that the longe Senclees be calde the key of the sote. or the Closer. For what thyng som euer it be yᵗ yolde halcke strenyth: open that Sengle. and all the sote is open. for the strength therof sortyfieth all the sote.

¶ Seris of watery or wayy colowre.

Knalde ye: that the skynne a bolde yolde halckys legges & his sete. is calde: the Seris of his legges and his sete. Whether thay be Watery belled or of Wayy colowre yolowe.

Digitized by Google

¶ The Beme feder. Full Sommyd myd. and Reclaymede.

An halbke hath .vij. federis vppon his tayle. and on principall feder of thyssame is in the myddis. and in maner all that oder bene coueryd vnder thyssame feder. and that is called the Beme feder of the tayle. And ther gooth blacke barris ouerthwarde the tayle. and thoe same barris shall telle yoll whan she is full summed. or full fesmyd. For whan she is full barrid she stondith vppon .vij. and then she is perfite rede to be Reclaymede.

¶ Ye shall vnderstonde that as longe as an halbke stondeth vnder the nombre of .vij. barris. And she be in hir sore aage: it most be sayde that she is not full summed. for so longe she is bot tender Pennyd Whether she be brathncher or Eyes.

¶ And iff she be a melbed halbke. and stonde Withim .vij. barris. ye shall say she is not full fesmed. for she is not habull to be Reclaymed. be cause she is drathe to soone olbt of the melbe for she is not harde pennyde. no more than a soore halbke.

¶ Brayles or Degouted

So knall forthermor of halbkes. an halbke hath long smale White federis. hangyng vnder the tayll: from hir bolbell dolbne Warde. and the same federis ye shall call the brayles or the brayle federis. And communely euery goshalbke and euery tercellis braylis bene bysprenged With blake speckes. like Armyns. and for all that thay bene accomptid neuer the better. Bot ondy a sparehalbke be so Armyned vppon the brayles. or a Musket. oder ye shall say she is Degouted to the vtermost brayle. and much it betokynis hardnes.

Digitized by Google

¶ Brest federys . Plumage . Barbe federys . Pendaunt federys

The federis abouve the formore parteys of an hawke: wealled the brest federis . & the federis ond the wynges are plumage The federis vnder the bely be calde the barbe federis . And the federis that bene at the Joynte : at the hawkes kne thay stonde hangyng and sharpe at thendes . thos be calde the pendaunte federis.

¶ Flagg or saggis federys .

The federis at the wynges next the body be calde the flaggy or the saggy federis .

¶ Beme federes of the wyng Sercell

And the long federis of the wynges of an hawke bene calde the beme federis of the wyng . And the federis that sum call the pynyon feder . of a noder fowle . of an hawke : it is calde the Sercell ¶ And ye shall vnderstonde iff an hawke be in melde ye same sercell feder shall be the last feder that she will cast . and tyll that be cast . she is neuer melded . yit it has bene seen : that hawkes haue cast that same first as I haue herde say . bot that other Reble is gendralt . and when she hath cast hir sercelles in melde . then and not erst it is tyme for to fede hir with wash meete and to begynne to ensayme hire .

¶ Ensayme

Ensayme of an hawke is the grece . and bot if that he take a way with fedyng of wash meete and otherwyse as it shall be

declared here after. the Wilt gedder a panell Wich may be hir to termoste confusion. and the flye therwith. and take blood. and coolde ther vppon.

¶ Couertis or couert federis

Ther bene also federis that cloos vppon the sarellis. and thosſame be calde the couertis or the couert federis. and so alle the federis be calde that bene nest ouer the long bene federis. and the sagg federis vppon the Wynges

¶ Backe federis.

¶ The federis vppon the backe halſe be called the backe federis

¶ Beke Clape Nares Sere

¶ The Beke of the halbke is the vpper parte that is croked
¶ The nedre parte of hir beke is calde the clape of the halbke
¶ The Hoolis in the halbkes beke bene callede the Nares.
¶ The yoloh be tdene ye Beke & ye yeghen is calde ye Sere

¶ Crynettis.

¶ Ther be oon an halbke long ſmale blake federis: like hir; ris abolbe the sere & thosſame: be calde Crinettis of ye halbke

¶ Sore aage.

¶ Ye shalt vnderſtonde that the firſt yere of an halbke Wher ther she be calde Braldncher or Eyesh. that firſt yere is calde hir sore aage. and alle that yere she is calde a sore halbke. for

and ſhe eſchape that yere. With good fedyng ſhe is likly to endure longe.

¶ To Reclayme an hawke

Iff ye Wilt Reclaym youre hawke ye moſt departe oon mele in .iij. melis. vnto tyme that ſhe Wilt come to Reclayme. and Whan ſhe Wilt come to Reclayme encrece her melis euery day better and better. And or ſhe come to the Reclame make her that ſhe ſoure not. For thogh ſhe be Wele Reclaymed hit may happyn that ſhe Wilt ſoure: ſo hygh in to the Eyre. that ye ſhalt Nether ſe hir nor fynde hir.

¶ And iff youre hawke ſhalt flie to the partrich. looke that ye Enſayme her or ſhe flie. Wether ſhe be Gralonchez or Eyes Or melued hawke.

¶ Why an hawke is called an Eyes.

A Nhawke is calde an Eyes of hir Eyghen. for an hauke that is broght vp vnder a Buſſard or a Huttocke: as mony be: hath Wateri Eyghen. For Whan thay be diſcloſed and be pit in ferme tyll thay be full ſummyd. ye ſhalt knalde theym by theyr Wateri Eyghen. And alſo hir looke Wilt not be ſo quycke as a Gralonchers is. and ſo be cauſe the beſt knaldege is by the Eygh. they be calde Eyeſes.

Digitized by Google

¶ We may also knawe an Eyes. bi the paleneſe of the ſeres of her legges of the ſere ouer the bake. And alſo by the tayn; ye that be vppon her tayll and her wengys wiche tayntys com for lacke of fedyng. when thay be Eyes.

¶ what a taynt is.

A Tayne is a thyng that gooth ouerbarte the federis of the wynges. and of the tayll lyke as andy it were eetyn with wormys and it begynyth firſt to brede at the body. in the penne and that ſame penne ſhall frete aſonder. and falle a way thur; with the ſame tayne andy then is the hawke diſparagid for all that yere.

¶ Medecynys to Enſayme yowre hawke

Take the Rote of Raſue and do it in clene Water. and lay thy fleſh ther in. to temper a grete while · and yeue it to yowre hawke to eete. and if ſhe eete therof. drede not bot hit ſhall be; nymme hir greee. bot within. iij. days ſhe ſhall not grettely a; bate.

¶ Alſo take puliall andy garlek and ſtampe it wele to ge; der. and wrynge owte the Juce in a dyſh. and then weete the fleſh therin. and fede yowre hawke therwyth. andy bot it tem; pur yowre hawke. that is to ſay enſayme yowre hawke. with in. iij. days. I mervell bot looke euery day that ye make nelw Juce and when ye fede hir. weete yowre meete ther in.

Digitized by Google

¶ Also take the Juce of percelly Moris otherwise calde perselly Roots. and thossame of Isop. and Wasshe yolde flesh therin and yolde halke shalt be Ensaymed kyndly. and no grete abate to the halke.

¶ Som vse to lay thare flesh in Water almoste a day. and yeue thossame to the halke at sopere. and that at lyth alle nyght. to geue to hit in the morneyng. and thus to fede hym in mell or they be drauen a bolde a monyth or .vi. Weekes. and to ensayme theym or they com on fiste. as sone as they caste theyr celle. then is the tyme to begynne to fede hym soo.

¶ How yowre hawke enlaymyth

Understonde ye for certayn: that as longe as yolde halkes fete be blakyssh and rough: she is fulle of grece. and euer as she ensaymyth. hir fete Wille Way yolow and smothe

How ye shall gyde yow whan yowre hawke is redy to flie. Also ye shall lay put vp a partriche

When ye haue ensaymed yolde halke: and Reclaymed hir. and that she is rede to flie to the partrich. ye moste take a partrich in yolde bagge. and goo in to the felde. and let

Digitized by Google

yolbre ſpanyellis fynde a Couy of partrichys. and when thay be put vpp. and begynne to ſtatre. ye moſt haue markeris to marke ſom of thaym. and then coblple vp yolbre houndys. Wan ye haue ſo woon. let ſum feloſh of yolbris preuely take the partrich olbte of yolbre bagge. and tye it by the legge: With a creaunce. and caſt it vp as high as ye can. and⁹ as ſoon as the halbke ſeith hir ſhe Will flie thez to. and if yolbre halbke ſees the partrich a woone. yeue hir a relbarde: therupon. and go after yᵗ by layſoure to the partrich that be marked and do as I ſhall telle yolb here folollyng.

¶ Iff ye haue a chaſtiſed hounde: that Will be rebuket: and is a Retriuer. vncouple him and no moo of yolbre houndes. and goo to a ſengler partrich: of the couy ſo ſparpld. and be as nygh as ye can to the Riſyng therof and if yolbre halbke deſire caſt hir to it. and if ſhe take it then is yolbre halbke made for that yere. and of the ſame partrich that ſhe fleth. thus ye mooſt relbarde hir as it ſhelbith here next folollyng.

¶ how ye ſhall rewarde yowre hawke.

Take a knyfe and cutt the hde and the necke from the body of the partrich. and ſtripe the ſkynne a Way from the necke. and yeue that ſame to the halbke. and couer the body of the folble With a bonett or an hatt. and lay the ſſayd hde and the necke therup-

Digitized by Google

poy . and if ſhe wilt forſake the foule that ſhe plumyth on . and com to the relbarde . then preuyli take a way the partrich . and re warde youre halke with the Brayne . and the necke . Be ware that ſhe ete no bonys . for that is euell to endele . and it wilt make hir ronluſty : for to flye . And thus ye moſt ſerue hir of as many as ſhe ſleth . but let hir relbarde be the laſſe . for ellis ſhe may be ſone fult goorged . and then ſhe may flye no more a grete while .

Chow ȳowre hawke ſhall Reioyſe .

And whan youre halke hath floyne a foule . and is re; warded as I haue ſayde . let hir not flue in no whiſe tyll y^t ſhe haue Reioſed hir . that is to ſay . tyll ſhe haue ſelled . or ſnyded hir bele . or ellys wolfed hir . and whan ſhe hath done any of theys . or alt . go and retriue moo and ſhe wilt nym plente .

Whan ȳowre hawke hath nomme a foule how ȳe ſhall do that ȳe rebuke not the hawke .

Irene wele oon thyng . and belware therof . whan youre hau ke hath nomme a partrich . ſtonde a goode way of . and come not to nygh hir . and dryue a way youre houndys . for rebu kyng of hir . for many halkys loue noon houndys . and alſo

many holdnoys Wilt bnymme theym theyre gamme from ther
fote. and that is parlous. and Whiles yolbre halbke plumith
nimme sofely tolbarde hir. allbay nere andy nere. and if she
leue plumpng. and loke (oppon yolb · stonde stylt and cherke
hir. and Whistylt hir. tylt she plume ayen. and thus serue hir
tylt ye be right nere hir. Than softe and layserly: salt oppon
yolbre kneys. andy preuely Whyle she plumyth sett yolbre honde
and be sure of the gesse. and than ye may gyde alt thyng as ye
Wylt. and if ye doo the contrary: she Wylt for feere cary hir
game or let it go quyke. and that is bot losse to yolb andy
yolbre halbke also.

A medecyne for to make an hawke to cast that is a comberyd with castyng with in her body

Take the Juce of Salandyne · and Welz a morcelt of flesh
therm. the molbntenaunce of a Note. and yeue that morcelt
to the halbke. and that shalt make hir for to cast hir olde cast
tyng. and the halbke shalt be safe.

A medecyne for an hawke that will soure

Wasch the flesh that yolbre halbke shalt be fedde With: in ye
Juce of fenelt. and that shalt take allay that pride from hir
and make hir to leue her solbryng Whether she be lene or fatte.

Digitized by Google

And many tymes an hawke will sowre when she lacketh bathyng.

A medecyne for an hawke that is lowse.

Take quycke siluer and put it in a bassien of brasse. and do ther to saladyne: and asbys. and medyll it wele to geder. tyll all the quycke siluer be dede. and medyll therto fat of bonyes. and anoynte the hawke therwith. and hang it aboute his necke tyll it fall a way. and that shall slee the lies.

Also powdre of orpement blowen vppon an hawke: with a penne shall slee the lies.

Also take a dagon or pece of Rough blanket vnshorn and holde it to the fire. vnto tyme it be thowgh wolle warme and wrappe the hawke therin. and than holde hir softely and stylly. for hurtyng in powdre bondys. and the vermyn will crepe in to the cloth.

Also holde hir in the sonne in a fayre day. & ye shall se the vermyn crepe wolle vppon her federis. then take a knyfe and bete the oon side of the blade therof w' powdre molloth. & alway as thay appere lay the bete side of the knyfe to theym. and they will cleue ther to. and then ye may slee thaym.

Digitized by Google

¶ The opynyon of Ostregiers.

After the opynyon of many Ostergiers: and ye fede yolde shalde contynually with Horse with Jayes. with Pyes. Or especially here his mech̄ Rayeny Reder. thay shall be lolbse.

¶ Ostregeris. Speruiteris. Faukeneris.

Nold be cause I speke of Ostregeris: ye shall vnderstonde that thay be calde Ostregeris that kepe Goshalkys. or Tercellis. and tho that kepe Sperhalkys and musketys ben called Speruiteris. and keperis of all other halkys ben callide Faukeneris.

¶ The length of the Gesse. Iewnes. Tyretis. and how they be fastined. & Bewettis

Halkys haue aboute thyr leggys Gesse made of leder most commynly. som of silke. Wich shulde be no lenger bot that thy knottis of thym shulde appere in myddys of thy lefte honde: betwene the longe fyngre and the leche fyngre. because the lesbnes shulde be fastened to thym. With a payre of tyretis. Wich tyretis shuld reste vppon thy lesbnes. and not vppon the gessys. for hyngyng and fastynyng vppon trees When thy flyeth. and the saame lesbnes. nold shall fastyn than abolde nolde lyttyll fyngre slackely. in compassyng thy saame m. iiij. or. v.

folde. as a bold sterying mocuppede and the tercettes serue to kepe hir from byndyng when she bathes ¶ Also thessame letheris that be putt in hir bellis: to be fastyned a boute hir leggys ye shall calle Bewettis.

¶ Creaunce.

Also ye shall call the long lyne that ye do call youre halbke to reclaym with: youre Creaunce. what so euer it be.

¶ A medecyne for an hawke that will cast flesh

Putt the flesh that youre halbke shall eete: in fayre water. and fede her therwith. iij. dayes. and she shall holde his flesh at the best.

¶ A medecyne for an hawke that has lost here corage.

An halbke that hath loost her corage: a man may knalbe if he will take good hede. For sicke is hir maner. when she is cast to a folde. she fleeth a haybarde as though she knewe not the folde. Or ellis she will flie a littyll way after. and a noon she yeueth it vpp. and for suche an halbke thys is a goode medecyn.

¶ Take Oyle of spayne and tempre it with clere wyne. and with the yolke of an egge and put therin hese. and therof yeue to yolwe walke .v. morcellis. and then set hir in the sonne. and at euen fede hir with an olde hole colues. and if ye fede hir thus .iij. tymys that walke was neuer so lusty nor so Joly before. as she will be after and come to hir owne corage.

¶ Other make poudre of mecles that stynkith. and putt the poudre on the flesh of a peoke and medill the blode of the peoke among the poudre. and make hir to ete the flesh.

A medecyne that an hawke shall not lie i mew for vnlustynese.

Take ferne Rotis that growith on an Oke. and oke appil lis and make Juce of theym. and bete hir flesh therin. & fede the walke .ij. tymys or .iij. and that shalt make hir to leue that

¶ A medicine for an hawke that hath the teyne

An walke that hath the teyne a man may sone knaw if he take hede. for this is hir maner She will pante more for oon batyng then an other for .iiii. & if she shulde flie a litylt while she shuld almost lese hir breth. Whether she be fatte or lene. and alway she maketh hyr chere. and for that this is the medycyne.

Digitized by Google

Take a quantyte of the Redeneſſe of haſelt With the poudre of Raſne and peper and ſomWhat of gynger. and make the reſt in freſh grece iij. pelletys and holde the pokke to the fire and When ſhe felith the hete make hir to ſWalowe the iij pelletys by ſtrength. and knytte faſt her beke that ſhe caſt it not oWte and do ſo thries. and ſhe ſhall be ſafe.

¶ Alſo take Raſne and Rubarbe. and grynde it to gedre. and make Juce therof and Wete the fleſh therin. and yeue it hir to ete. and ſhe ſhall be Wolt.

¶ Alſo take aliſaWndre and the Roote of primarole and the Roote of gowgnauteles and ſeeth alt in the Wattre of a Well and yeue hir iij morcellis euery day vnto the tyme that ſhe be hole. and looke that ſhe be Wide When ye yeue hir the medecyne.

How a man ſhall take an hawke fro the Eyrer

Who ſo takys an hawke from the Eyrer: hym behoueth to doo Wiſely. in bryngyng hym eaſely. and to kepe him Wele from colde. and from hurtyng of theyr bonys. for thay be full tendre. and thay moſt haue grete reſt. and thay may not haue ſtynkyng & filthy Eyre but as clene as can & may be thoght. and euermore yeue him clene meete. and hote. & a litelt & oftyn. & change oftyn ther meete but loke it be hot

and cutt hyr meete in to ſmale morcellis. for thay ſhulde nott tyrr on bonys tyll they myght flie. Then after when ſhe begynnyth to penne. and plumyth. and ſpalchith and pikith hyr ſelfe. Putt hir in a clooſe warme place. that no fulmertis nor feycheus. ne other vermyn com nott in to hir. and let the place be ſecure from wynde and rayne. and then ſhe will preue hir ſelfe and euer more yeue hir good hote meetys. For it is better to a man to fede his halke while ſhe is tendre with hote meetis. to make hir good with ſomme coſt. then to fede hir with euell meetis to make hir vnthrefti with lyttyll coſt. ¶ And looke when ſhe begynnyth to ferme then yeue hir bathyng.

¶ medecyne for wormys in an hawke wiche ſe henelle is called the Fylaundris.

Merke wele this ſeweneſe and beware therof. This is the medecyne therfore. ye ſhalt take an herbe that is called Neppe and putt it in a ſmall gut of a Capon or of an henne. and knyt it with a threde. and let hir Reſaue it hoolt. and ſhe ſhalt be hoolt and ſaafe ¶ Thus ye ſhalt knawe when yoore halke hath wormys in hir bodde. Looke when ſhe yeth caſtyng and ye ſhalt fynde oon or .ij. a bodde hir caſtyng place iff ſhe haue ony.

¶ A medecyne for an hawke that caſtys wormys at the foundemēt what wormis that thei be

Take the lymaylle of Iren: & medyll it w^t fleſh of poorke &

yeue it to ye hauke . ij . dayes for to kepe . and she shall be hoolt

A medecyne for an hawke that hath a sekenesse the wich is called the aggresteyne .

When ye se yoore hauke hurte his fete with his Beke . and pullyth his tayll . then she hath the aggresteyne . For this sekenesse take Merde of a dowe . and of a shepe . and of an allow ; and stronge vynegre . and do all softely in a bassyn of brasse . & Medyll hem wele to geder : to serue . ij . dayes after . and yeue hir flesh of a colues with ony and with poudres of pepir . and ley hir in a derke place . and doo so . xv . dayes . and when ye see Melo federis in the tayll . wash hir with euewose . and she shall be hoole and soafe .

A medecyne for an hawke that hath the cra; ampe in hir wynges and how it cumunyth .

For this Cwampe take a whyte looff of brede sumdeal colder then it commyth out of the ouen . and let holde the hauke soof tely for hurtyng . and kut the loofe almooste thowh oute . and display the wynge esely . and holde it betwene the . ij . partes of the loofe . and ley let it be hoolde so . the space of alfe a quartes of an howre . and she shall be hoole .

The Cwampe commyth to an hauke with takyng of co; lde in hir youthe . Therfore it is goode for an hauke to ke; pe hir warme : yonge and hoold . and this medcyne is good at all tymes for his whether she be yonge or holde .

Digitized by Google

Yet not an hawke be put in mew to late but in this maner as it folowth. if ye loue youre hawke

If ye loue wele youre hawke. Kepe hir wele. and put hir nott late in mewe. for who so for coueteſneſe of flieng leſes the tyme of his hawke mewyng. and withholdis hir to long therfro he may after putt hir i mewe at auenture. for then a parte of hir mewyng tyme is paſt. ¶ Who ſo puttyth his hawke in mewe in the begynnyng of Lentyn. if ſhe be kepit as ſhe aught to be ſhe ſhall be mewed. in the begynnyng of Auguſte.

¶ how ye ſhall diſpoſe and ordayn youre mewe

Sett and diſpoſe youre mewe. in this maner ſo. that no wete nor pulcalt nor non other wermyn entre ther to Nor none wynde. nor no grete colde Nor that it be ouer hote. Let that on parte of the mewe be turned to warde the ſonne. ſo that in the moſt parte of the day: the ſonne may come Inne.

¶ Alſo ye moſt ſe that ſhe be not aueyed nor greued with myche noyſe. nor with ſong of men. and that no manner folkes come to hir. but oonly he that fedyth hir.

¶ It behoupth that youre hawke haue a fedyng ſtokke in hir mewe. and a longe ſtryng tyed therto: to faſtyn hir mete with for ellis ſhe will cary it a wodde the hous. and ſoyle it with duſt And parauenture ſhe will hyde it talt it ſtynke. and then fede vppon it. and that myght be hir deth. and therfor when it is wondyn to the ſayd fedyng ſtocke. ſhe ſhall nether at the fedyng nor at the tyrying ne at the lightyng ne at the Ryſyng hurtte hir ſelfe. And whan ſhe hath fedde. take a way the remenaunt if any leeue. and in anywyſe that ſhe haue clene mete. and alt euery meell freſh. for of ſtale metis and euell metis ſhe ſhal engender mony ſeknes. ¶ And loke ye go neuer to youre

melb bot Whyn ye ſhalt geue yolbre halbke meete . or ellis to bry-
ng Water to bathe hyr . and ſuffyr no Rayn to Beete hir at no
tyme . and ye may . and as for hir bathyng that ſhalt no thig
hynder hir melbyng .

¶ The maner how a man ſhall put an hawke in to mewe . and that is to be wele nouted .

Off oon thyng ye moſt beWare Beeſt yff ſhe haue any ſeke-
nes that ye make hyr hole or ye put hir in melbe . for as J un-
derſtonde a ſeke halbke ſhalt neuer melb Well . for though ſhe me
lbe ſhe ſhalt not endure bot Whyle ſhe is grete and fatte . for at the
abatyng of hir aſtate ſhe may no lenger endure .

¶ Some tyme With olbt any medicyne many men deuyſyn hou
thay myght melb ther halbkys for ſum put halbkys in melb at
high eſtate . and ſum Whyn thay be right lolb . and ſum Whan
thay be fulk . and ſum Whyn they be Empty and lene . and ſume
Whyn thay be myſerabulk lene . ¶ Bot therof it is no force . iff ſhe
be hole Neuertheles . J ſhalk ſay myn aduyce as J haue ſene &̄
lerned .

Who ſo puttith a Gofhalbke or a Tercelk or a ſpere halbke in
to melb ſo high that ſhe may be no higher . ſhe Wolk holde hir lo-
nge in the poynt : or that ſhe leſe or lent any federis . ¶ And Who ſo
puttith hir in melb lene . it Will be long or ſhe be remounted and
Who ſo puttith hir in melb to hungry and to lene : if ſhe haue me
ete at hir Wolk ſhe Wolk ete to moch . be cauſe of hungre . and pa-
uenture ſhe may be dede ther by . as hath ofte be ſene

Bot Who ſo Wolk that an halbke endure and melb kyndli . myn
counceſk it is that ſhe be not to high noder to lolb . noder in gre

be deffeesse of hungre. bot like as she wolde flee best then take hede the first day of to moch eetyng. vnto tyme that she be stalwnchid and after that a man may take her sich mete as I shall telle mo be playnli here after

In what maner and how a man shall fede his hawke in mewe.

Loke with what meetis she hath bene most vsed to be fedde and fede hir therwith. viij. days contynualli. and thy. viij. days yeue hir birdis inowh. both mowh and euyn. and let hir plomme vppon hem wele. and take eesyng of the plomage. and that shall talwnt hir wele. and cause her to haue goode appetide and it shall clense wele hir bowellis and whan she is weell clensed. ye may yeue hir what meete that ye will so it be clene and fresh

Bot the beste mete to make an halke to melbe moost sone with oute any medecyne is the flesshe of a kydde and of a yong swanne and of a chikyn and especiall ratonys flesh so ther be not assaughte moon like to hit and of a yong goos for such meete is bote of it selfe.

And take gobettis of grete fresh elis. and specialli the colpoy next the mauell. and beete it in hote blode of moton it is goode to make her to melbe. bot specialli it shall make her right after hir goore aage

Thees sayd fleshes bene goode to melbe an halke: and to kepe hir in state bot loke she haue goode plente euery day. so that she rather leue parte then lacke any. and euery. iij. day let hir both if she lyst

¶ And when she waxith nygh ferme yeue hir hennys and salt porke and of an hounde is passing good.

¶ An halke is neuer fully ferme nor redy forto drawe olde of mele vnto tyme hir fetcelt be full gropy. yet haue I sene sum folkys take hem olde of melde when the fatcelt were not halfe i sponge. and that is perlous. for they are not then hade penned.

¶ Som folkys vsen when an halke has cast hir fatcelt to begynne and wash hir meete. and fede hir so in melde with wash meete a monyth or .vi. weekys or euer thay drawe thaym.

¶ Hot of alt flethes after she is melted. a resenable goorge of an hoote haare is beest. and also of a crolde hoote. but it moste be wash in water: and then it is the better. For that will not benymmen hem hastely theyr grece. ner put hem in no grete febulnes · for it durith sumdeal with hir.

¶ To make an hawke to mew tymeli with owt any hurtyng of hir.

Nolde I shall tell yolde veray true medecynes for to melte an halke hastyly that ye shalt beleue for trouthe and ye will assay thaym.

¶ Ther be in woddys or in hedgis wormys calde eddres that ben redde of nature · and he is calde vepa. and also ther be snakys of thessame kynde. and they be verri bittir. Take .ij. or .iij of thaym and smyte of ther hedes and thendys of theyr taylis. Then take a nelde ezthen pot: that was neuer vsed. and cut hem

i to ſmall gobettys. and put thoſſame therin. and let hem ſe; the ſtongliche. a greete while. at good layſer. and let the pot be couered. that no ayre com owte of it ner no breth and let it ſe the ſo long that the ſaame colpons ſeth to greece. then caſt it out and doo a way the bonis. and geder the greece. and put it in a cle ne veſſill. and as oft as ye fede yolure halke: anoynt her meete therin. and let hir ete as moch as ſhe will. and that meete ſhal melde her at yolure allone will.

¶ Another medecyne.

Take whete: and put it in the brothe that thoderis were ſo: then in. and when ye ſe the whete begynneth to cleue: take it owt and fede hennys or chyckennes therwith. and fede yolure halke with thoſſame polayn.

Who ſo will that an hawke mewe not nor fall noon of hir federis. therfore here is a medecyne

Take polder of Caneſl. and the Juce of franke coſt and the Juce of paraunce. and take morcellis of fleſh. iij. or. iiij. if ye luſt and beete them therin. and make the halke to ſwalow hem and ſerue hir ſo many tymys.

¶ Alſo take the ſleymne of a ſnake or of an Edder. and cut it in to ſmale peces. and temper it with hoote blode: and cauſe yolure halke oftyn tyme to fede therof and ſhe ſhall not melde.

Digitized by Google

¶ For the gowte in the throte.

When ye se yolowe yalowe blaw of tyn tymes: and that it comys of no batyng. ye may be sure sh̄e hath the gowte in the throte And for that Take the blode of a pekoc. and Encense myrra; bolanana. and clalbis of gelofre. and canell and gynger. and take of all thes eu̇nlich and medyll hem with peokkys blode and seth it tyll it be thycke. and therof make morcellis. and yeue the yalowe therof euery day. at mydmorne and all Noone.

For the gowte in the hede and i the Rayñes.

When ye se yolowe yalowe may not endw̄ her meete nor remoū be her astate. she hath the gowte in the hede and in the Rayñes.

¶ Take Mompañ oderwise called mompȳ. among Apotecaries ye may haue it. and the skynne of an haare and yeue it to yolowe yalowe to eete. iy. tymes with the flesh of a catt. and iff sh̄e may holde that meette sh̄e shall be saafe.

¶ A medecyne for a sekenes called the fallera

When ye se that yolowe yalowes clees way white: then sh̄e has the fallera. For this sekenes take a blacke snake. and cutte a way the hede. and the tayll. and take the myddyll. and fry it in an erthyn pote. and take the grece and saue it. and anoynt the flesh of a pecoke therwith and yeue it to the yalowe for to

Digitized by Google

eete viij. dayes: and ye haue no peoke yeue hir fleſh of a colū and after the viij. dayes. yeue hir a chekyn. and waſh it a littil and yeue it hir to eete. and take the tendereſt of the breſt with the ffreſchelt bone and let hir eete it. and if ſhe amende anything ſhe ſhalt be holt.

A medecyne for the crampe in the thigh in the legge and in the fote of an hawke.

When ye ſe youre hauke lay hir oon fote vppō hir odir fote. ſhe is take with the crampe. Then drawe his blode vppon the fote yt lies vppon that othez fote. and vppon the legge alſo. and ſhe ſhalt be hole.

¶ For the Cogh or the poole.

Take polidre of Hayes: and put it vppon the fleſh of a Colūer: and yeue it ofte to polidre hauke and with oute doute ſhe ſhalt be hole.

¶ A medecyne for the podagre.

When polidre hawkes fete be ſwollyn ſhe hath the podagre then Take freſh may butter and as moch of Oyll of olyf and of alyn. and chauſe it wele to gedre at the fiere and make therof anoyntement. and anoynt the fete. iiij. dayes. and ſet hir in the ſonne. and yeue hir fleſh of a cat. and if that auayll nott Seth the cuttyngs of a vyne. and wrappe it a bolde the ſwellyng. and let her ſit vppon a colde ſtone and anoynt hir with butter or freſche grece. and ſhe ſhalt be holt.

Digitized by Google

A medecyne for a sekenes within the body of an hauke and it shewith not outewarde how she shall be holpen and in what maner.

A man may knaw by the eyen and rongladnes of an hauk: he his infirmyte bot yet it is straunge to knawe: thynges that a man may not se: in what sekenes and what maner they be grawyde and specialli whan a man whote not wherof it comyth ¶ Fede youre hauke wele vppon an hynne and then make her to fast. ij. days after: to awide weele his wombellis. The thryd day take hony sodēn and fyll his body fulle. and bynde his bake that she cast it not owt of his body and then set his owtt in the sonne. and when it drawith towarde euen fede his with an hoote sobbe. for as I herde my mayster is say and she be nott holle herof. loke neuer oder medcyne.

For the pallion that Gothawkis haue fastyng

¶ Take the Rote of smalle Rysshes. and make Juce of hem and weete youre flesh therm and make her to ete it.

¶ For hawkis that ben wonded.

Take a way the federis abowt the wonde and take the white of an Egge and Oyle of Olyue. and medill it to gedre. and anoynt the wonde and kepe it with white lyne. vnto tyme ye sede flesh. and then put in the wonde Escompe salt vnto tyme the

dede fleſh be waſtyde. after take encence: and clene as mych of that oon as of that oder. medik it in fere. and whan ye wilk a; noynt the ſoore hede yolwe oyntement and anoynt it with a pen: tylk the tyme the ſkynne growh ayeme. and if ye ſe dede fleſh ther on: and wolk haue it away Take venecreke & then anoynt itt with this Oyntement aforſayde and ſhe ſhalk be hoolk

¶ A medecine for an hauke that has the artetik

When ye ſe yolwe halke fat awolde the herk trauſt it for trou th ſhe hath the artetike. Therfore do let hir blode in the Origynal vayne. and after that yeue hir a frogge for to ete. & ſhe ſhalk be hoolk

A medecine for an hauke combred i the bowillis

When yolwe halke is Encombred in the bolwillis ye ſhalk k; nalk it by hir Eyghes. for hir Eighen wilk be derke and ſhe wilk looke vngladli and hir meteſſing wilk defolde hir foundement. Then take the halkes meete and anoynt it with polwdre of an; nelk and yeue it hir to ete. and ſhe ſhalk be hoolk.

¶ A medecyne for an hawke that has the goute

Rede yolwe halke with an Irchyn onys or twyes. & it ſhalk helpe hir:

Digitized by Google

¶ A medecyne for an hawke that hath mites.

Take the Juce of Wormelwode and put it there thay be and there shall dye.

¶ That an hauke vse hir craft all the selon to flye or leke.

When ye go to the felde in the latter ende of haldeyng and desire that yolure hawke shall vse hir crafte. Do to hir in this maner let hir sle a folde. and let hir plym vppon it asmoch as the Will. and when she hath plymmed Inough go to hir softely for fraying. and welcome hir on the folde. and after that ye may cast hir on a perch. & aswell she may vse hir craft so. as that she sleth alle the yere.

¶ A medecyne for an hauke that has the stoon

¶ Anoynt hir fundement with Oyll. and put the polder of alym with an hole strawe.

¶ Also take an herbe callid cristis ladder. & anoynt hir mouth the within and she shall be hoolt.

¶ Also take smale slamke wotis and polipodi and the corne of sporge and grinde it weell and seeth it in butter. and drawe it thorugh a clooth. and make therof. iij. pellettis of the grettenes of a Not. and put it in hir mouth in the morowtide. and lete that she be voide. and then let hir fast till euensong. and fede hir litelle and litelle. and she shall be hoolt.

¶ A medecyne for vermyn.

Take the Juce of the Roote of ffenell. and do it where the vermyn be. and thay shall dye.

¶ A medecine for the Reume that haukis haue

When ye se yolde hauke cloose her Eyghen. and shakith hirself. then hath she the Reume in the hede. Therfore yeue hir larde of a gote the first day and the secunde yeue hir eratike with the flesh of a chycon and she shall be hoolt.

¶ A medecyne for haukis that bene dry and desyre to drynke, to kepe hem moyst in kynde.

¶ Take the Juce of haarhounde and beete thyn halkeys mete therin. and fede her therwith onys or twyes. and she shall be hoolt.

For sekenes that haukis haue i their Entrellis.

A Nhalke that is seke within thentrayles: is of an oder array then moder sekenesses. for if she holde not hir mete wel cast it. that is tokyn of the foule glet. for surfete of feders that be yeuen to thalkis in theyr youth and afterwarde when thay come vnto trauayll. and ben anoyde of the Reuer then thay wayen sloth to flye and desire forto rest. and when thauke is vpon hir perch then she with slepe forto putouer. at thentrig

and if ſhe holde fleſh any while in hir goorge: it will loke as it wor ſooden and when ſhe is waked ſhe aſſayeth to put ouer of thentryng. and it is agluttide and colded: with the glett yt ſhe hath engendeid. and if ſhe ſhulde aſcape ſhe moſt put ouer. or ellis ſhe moſt dye. or caſt it and if ſhe caſt it ſhe may be hole pe with the medecyne.

¶ A medeeyne for the Entreyllis.

Take yolkys of Eggis rawe. and when they be wele beton to geder. put therto ſpanyſhe ſalte. and aſmych hony therto. & weete therin thy fleſhe. and fede thyn halke. iij. days therwith and if ſhe make daunger to eete it. let holde thyn halke. and make hir to ſwalow. iij. or. iiij. morcellis in a day. and ſecurli ſhe ſhalt be holt ¶ Yit I ſhalt ſay to yow a noder thyng. take hony at the choungyng of the moon. and a kene nettyll and therof make ſmall powdre and when it is well gwonde. take ye breſt woon of an henne. and a noder of a colwer. and halke it with a knyfe. and do away the ſtynne. and do theron the powdre and all hoote with the powdre fede hir. and do ſo thries. and ſhe ſhalt be holt.

¶ For ſekenes of Swellyng.

If an wicked felon be ſwollyn in ſich a maner yt a man may kelt it. that the halke ſhalt not dye thus a man may hel pe hir ſtrongly. and lengthe hir lyfe. bot the halke will be ver ey eegre and gleetous of the ſekenes. and therfor ye moost

Digitized by Google

Take the Rote of comfory and ſugre iliche mych . and ſethe it in freſh grece with the thridde parte of hony . and then drall it thorogh a fayre clooth . and oft yeue it to the halke and ſhe ſhall amende .

For blaynis ī haukes monthes cald frounches

Off the frounches it is dredde for halkes . for it is anoyus ſekenes . and dralwith hir to deth . and with holdeth hir ſtreng; the . for men ſayn that it commyth of colde . For colde doth halkes mych harme . and makyth fleßome falk ofte of the brayne & the Eyghen with ſtelk and empeyre in her hede . and bot ſhe haue haſteli helpe it with ſtoppe her naſe thrillis . And therfor Take Fenell Marygall and Rēſis ilich moch . and ſethe it & drall it thorough a cloth . and oder whiles waſch her hede therwt and put ſom in the Roofe of her mowth . and ſhe ſhall be ſaafe

A medicine for an hauke that caſtis hir fleth

Wete hir flethe in ſarſorik or ellis ſeeth Raſus in Water and put her flethe therin : When it boylith .

A medecyne for the Reume clepid Agrum

When thou ſeeth thy hauke vppon his mouth and his chekis blobbed . then ſhe hath thys ſekenes calde Agrum . Therfor take a nedil of ſiluer and hete it ī the fire . and brynne the Narellis thourogh ofte . then anoynt it with oyle of Olyff .

¶ For to make an hawke grete and fatte.

Take a quantyte of porke and ony and butter Jliche my-che and porgede grece and do a Way thy ſteynne. and ſethe hem to geder. and anoynt thy fleſh therm. and fede yolbre halbke therwith. and ſhe ſhalt encrece myghtely. Ellis take the Wyn-ges of an Eued. and fede hir and kepe hir from trauelt and do ſo ofte though the eued be neuer ſo fatte. and if yolbre halb-ke be not paſſing fat Withm a fortenet Wondre J thynke.

¶ For booches that growe in an hawkis Jowe

Kutt theys botches Wich an knyfe. and let olbte the mater. of theym. and after clenſe theym clene With a ſyluer ſpone or ellis fille the holk Wich a polbdre of aenemelit Jbrent. and yop pon that polbdre do a littil lazde: that is reſſide and ſo it Wil a Way.

Here is a goode medecyne for an hawke that Wyll not coom to Reclayme.

¶ Take freſh butter and put therto ſugre and put it in a cle ne cloth and Reclayme her to that and kepe it in a boy in you re. bagge.

A medecyne for hawkis that bene Refreyned.

Whm ye ſe yolbre halbke Reſeyng and Caſtyng Wat thorogh her Noſtrellis or hir naws then dolbteles ſhe is Refraned.

Digitized by Google

For that ſekenes: take ye greynes of ſhaffelegre and of pe; pez and grynde it Beell. and temper it Bith ſtrong vynegre and put in hiz Nares and in the Rooff of hiz moluth and yeue hiz fleſh to ete. and ſhe ſhall be ſaaff.

A medecyne for hawkys that haue payne in theyr croupes.

¶ Ye ſhall take fayre Morſan and poudre of geleſre: and meddell it to gedre. and yeue it to yolore halke to ete. and if ſhe hold it paſt the ſeaunde day after. ſhe ſhall be hoole.

A medecyne for the ſtoone in the fundement

¶ When yolore halke may not meteſe then ſhe hathe that ſekenes calde the ſtoon. And for this ſekenes: ye ſhall take the hezt of a ſlo̅yne and the grece of a ſlo̅yne. and cutt it Bith the fleſh of the hezt and ſhe ſhall be holpe.

¶ A medecyne for the dry Frounce.

For thys ſekenes take the Roote of Hollipoly that growth vppon Oleys. and ſeth it a grete Bhile then take it fro the fire and let it ſtonde and Bay leid Barme. then Bath yolore fleſh therm. and feede yolore halke. iij. tymes. and ſhe ſhall be hoole

¶ A medecyne for wormys called anguellis

Take preſſure made of a lombe that Bas borne in vntyme & maake therof. iij. morcellis and put it in a gut of a colues

and fede hir therwith and loke the halke be void whan ye yeue hir thys medecyne.

¶ Also take Juce of dragonys and put fulle the gut of a pe; gion and then cut it and depart it as the halke may ouerslo lowe it. and put it in his body. and knyt his beke for caſtyng

¶ Also yeue hir the hallockye of a Huc as hote as thay ben out olde. and make powdre of the pynyll and caſt it vppō the fleſh of a Cat. and fede hir therwith & she ſhall be holle.

AN hawke Tyrith. Fedith. Goorgith. Bekith. Rouluth. Enduyth. Mutith. Perchyth. Joyllith. Puttihouer. Proynyth. Plommyth. She warbullith. and mantellith.

She tyrith vppon Rumppys. She fedith on alle maner of fleſh. She goorgith when she fillith hir goorge with meete. She bekyth when she ſelvith: that is to ſay she wypith hir beke. She Rouſith when she ſhakith alle hir federis and hir body to gedre. She Enduyth when hir meete in hir bowellys falle to di geſtion. She mutith when she auoydith hir order. She perchith when she ſtondyth on any maner bolve or perch. She Joylith when she ſlepith. She puttihouer when she Euoidith hir meete owte of hir goorge in to hir bowllis. She proynith when she fet chyth oyle with hir beke ou hir tayle and anoyntith hir fete & hir federis. She plōmyth when she pullith federis of any ſolde

or of any other thyng and caſtyth hem from her She warbelyth when ſhe drawith booth her wyngys ouer the myddys of her backe. and ther they mete both and ſoftely ſhakyth them. and let hem fall ayen. And ſhe mantylluth when ſhe ſtretchith her oon wyng a long after her lege. and afterwarde that other wyng. and moost comynly ſhe doth that afore or ſhe warbelyth hir.

¶ The namys of a Spare hauke as Oſtrigers and Sparuiters haue determyned

Ther is a queſtion ayyd whether a man ſhall call a ſpare hawke Or a ſpere hawke Or an aſpere hawke. & Oſtrigers. and alſo Sparuiters: ſayen ſhe may be callid all. iij. Namys. for thees reſonys. She may be callid a Spere hawke for of all the hawkys that ther be ſhe is moost ſpere. that is to ſay moost tendre to kepe. for the leſt myſdoyetyng and myſentendyng fleth.

¶ Alſo ſhe may be calde an aſpare hawke of ſharpneſſe of hir corage. and of hir lokyng quicly. and alſo of her fleyng For ſhe is moost aſper and ſharpe in all thyngs that belong vnto hir of any other hawkys

¶ She may be alſo callid a ſpare hawke for. ij. Reſones. oon is ſhe ſpareth goſhawkys and tercellys both. ſiche as ben in their ſoore aage. vnto tyme thay may be Reclaymyd. and made redy to flye. as Goſhawkys and tercellys that be not fulli melbed: vnto tyme they may be clene eſtaymyd and redy to flye. for all the whyle thay bene vnabuſt. the ſpare hawke occupithe theſſeſon. and fleth the partrich weell. that is to ſay froom ſaynt Margaretys day vnto it be lammas. and ſo forth in the yere.

¶ And ſhe wyll flee weell yong feſaundes: yong heth cockys

in the begynnyng of the yere. And after Michelmas whan yer; trewes passe her daunger I haue seen them made sum to sle the pie sum to sle the Tele vppon the Reuer: at the Jutte. sume to sle the Wodcok and sum for the blacke bride and the thrusshe.

¶ The Wodcok is combrous to sle: bot if there be crafte. there fore whyn ye come to a Wode or a quech of bushus. cast yolure sparehalbke m to a tre and beete the bushes then and if any Wo dcok arise she Will be sure therof. ¶ Ye most fyrst make hir to a folble cast vp olbt of the bushes. and yolure halbke most sit on loofte as ye make hir to a partriche. Also as I sayde ye may call hir a spare halbke: for an oder cause. for and ther Wer a shippe fraght. full of halbkis. and no thyng ellis. and ther We re a spare halbke among thaym ther shuld no custom be payd be cause of hir. And so for the most comune name thay be calde spa re halbkes for the resones a forsayd.

An hawke flieth to the vew to the Beke. or to the Toll. Nö Crepe Querre Fer Jutȳ ꝛc

An halbke fleeth to the Ryuer dyuersis Ways. and sle; the the folble dyuersli. That is to say she flieth to the Welle or to the beke. or to the tolle. & all is bot oon. as ye shall knalbe here after She fleeth also to the quarre: to the crepe. and no mo Ways bot thoes. iij. And she Nymmyth the folble at the fer Jut ty or at the Jutty ferre.

How shall ye knaw what theis termes betokyn & moo folowyng. as Huf. Jutȳ ferrȳ. Mounte Raundon. Crepe. Enewed.

Digitized by Google

A Goshaulke or a tercell that shalt flee to the Felde. to the holt or to the lake. in this maner she is taught ye moste fynde a folde in the Ryuer or in a pitte priuely. and theen sett youre haulke a grete space of. vppon a moolt hill or on the grounde. and crepe softely toward the folde: from youre haulke streyght Way and When ye come almoste ther as the folde lyeth. looke backeward towarde the haulke. and With youre hande or With youre tabur stryke: becke youre haulke to come to you. and When she is on Wyng · and comyth low by the grounde. and is almoste at yold. then smyte youre tabur. and cry huff. huff. huff and make the folde to spryng. and With that noyse the folde Wil rise and the haulke Wyll nym it.

¶ And nolde take hede. Iff youre haulke nym the folde at the ferr side of the Ryuer or of the pitt from yold Then she fleeth the folde at the ferr Iutty and if she slee it vppon that side that ye ben on · as it may haue dyuerse times. Then ye shalt say she hath slen the folde at the Iutty ferry.

¶ Iff youre haulke nym the folde a lofte: ye shalt say she toke it at the mounte or at the souce.

¶ And if the folde spryng not tot flee a long after the Reü and the haulke nym it then. ye shalt say she sleth it at the Raun dō.

¶ Creepe.

And youre haulke fleeth at or to the Creepe When ye haue yold youre haulke on youre fyst and crepe softely to the Ryuer or to the pit. and stelith softely to the brynke therof. and then cry huff. and by that meane Nym a folde. Then it is slayn at the Creepe ouer at the ferr Iutty · or at the Iutty ferry. as a boone is sayde.

Digitized by Google

¶ And if it happen as it doth oftimes the folke for fere of polcat walke wolt spring and fall ayen in to the Ryuer. or the walke sees hir. and so lie sykt and dare not arise. ye shall say then polcat walke hath smelled the folke in to the Ryuer. and so shall ye say and ther be moo folkes in the Ryuer then that polcat walke nymmyth if thay dare not arise for fere of yolk; or walke

¶ A thefte.

Understonde ye that a Gosshalke shulde not flie to any folke of the Ryuer with wilus in no wise. and therfore a Gosshalke is calde a therf.

¶ Querre.

And polcat walke fleeth to the querre. When ther be in a stobull tyme Sordes of mallardes in the felde and when she espith theym and commyth querre her selfe. and flie preuyli vnderhedges or lade by the grounde. and nym oon of hem. or thay ase then ye shall say that the folke was slayn at the querre.

Merke this terme drawe

Som folke myfuse this terme drawe. and say that thay haue wilt drawe to the Ryuer. And that terme drawe is propurli assigned to that walke that wilt flee a Roke or a Cowe or a Reuyn: vppon a londe stryng. and then it most be sayd that sich an walke wilt drawe wett to a Rooke.

Digitized by Google

Nowe ye shall vnderstonde if a man will make an hawke to the querre in this maner he most do

Take a tame Malarde and set hym in a fayr playn. and let hym goo where he will. then take yowre hawke vppon yowre fist. and goo to that playn. and holde vp yowre hande a praty way of from the Malarde. and looke if the hawke can espie it. by hir awyn corage and if she haue sowde the sowle and desire to flee therto. let hir flee it. and plymme Weell vppon hir. and sesue her so. ij. or. iij. tymes and then she is made to the quarre.

I haue knawyn gentylmen that whensoeuer and whersoeuer thay se any tame Dookes. and if theyr hawkys Wolde desire to thaym. then thay Wolde let flee to theym in comagyng theyr hawkys to be Weell fleyng to the quarre an oder tyme.

A praty craft to take an hawke that is brokyn owt of mew. and all maner of fowlys that lyt in trees if a man wyll.

Looke where an hawke perchith for all nyght: in any ma; ners place. and softe and layserly clymbe to her With a fon; ce or a lanterne that hath bot oon light. in yowre hande and let the light be towarde the hawke so that she se not yowre face and ye may take hir by the leggys or oder Wise as ye lyst. and in lyke Wise all other maner fowle.

Digitized by Google

Of hawkys Bellys.

The bellis that ȝolwe ȝalwke ſhall wher looke in any wi; ſe that thay be not to hwy ouer hir power to weyr. al ſo that noon be hwyer then an other wot like of weyght. Looke alſo that thay be ſonolwe and welk ſolwndyng and ſhil and not both of oon ſolwne: wot that oon be a ſemptoyn wnder a nodr. and that thay be hole and not brokyn and ſpecialli in the ſolwndyng place. For and thay be brokyn thay wyll ſolwne full dulli.

Off ſpare ȝalwke bellis ther is choice and lyttill of charge of thaym: for ther weth plenty.

But for Goſhalwkes ſomtyme Bellis of Melen were calde the beſt. and thay be full goode for thay comunely be ſolwnden with ſiluer and ſolde ther after. But ther be nolw vſed of Duchelande bellys: of a tolwne calde duredright. and thay be paſſing goode. for thay be wele ſortid welk ſolwnded. ſonolwre of Ryngyng in thilnes and paſſing welk laſtyng.

Here endyth the proceis of ȝalwkyng. And nolw foloys the naamys of all maner of ȝalwkys & to whom they belong.

Digitized by Google

¶ Theys hawkes belong to an Emproure

Theys be the names of all maner of hawkes . Fyrſt an Egle . a Ballterce . a Melodne . The ſympleſt of theis .iij Will ſlee an Hynde alſe . a Falcõ . a Roo a Kydde . an Elke . a Crane . a Buſtarde a Storke . a Swañ . a Fox in the playn grounde . And theis be not enlured . ne reclaymed . by cauſe that thay be ſo ponderouſe to the perch portatiff . And theis .iij . by ther nature belong to an Emprouere .

¶ Theis hawkes belong to a kyng .

Ther is a Gerfalken . a Tercell of a gerfauken . And the ys belong to a Kyng .

¶ For a prynce .

Ther is a Falken gentill . and a Tercell gentill . and the ys be for a prynce .

For a duke .

¶ Ther is a Falken of the rock . And that is for a duke

For an Erle .

¶ Ther is a Falken peregryne And that is for an Erle

¶ For a Baron .

Alſo ther is a Baſtarde and that hauke is for a Baron

Digitized by Google

Hawkes for a knyght

¶ Ther is a Sacre and a Sacret . And theis be for a knyght .

Hawkis for a Squyer .

¶ Ther is a Nanare and a Lanrett . And theys belong to a Squyer .

For a lady

¶ Ther is a Merlyon . And that hauke is for a lady

An hawke for a yong man

¶ Ther is an Hoby . And that hauke is for a yong man And theys be hawkes of the lowre : and ben both Iluid to be sale and reclaymed

¶ And yit ther be moo kyndis of hawkes

¶ Ther is a Gosshawke . and that hauke is for a yeman
¶ Ther is a Tercell . And that is for a lowere man .
¶ Ther is a Spare hawke . and he is an hawke for a preest
¶ Ther is a Muskyte . And he is for an holiwater clerke And theis be of an oder maner kynde . for thay flie to Quere and to fer Iutty and to Iutty ffezzy .

¶ Explicit .

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Lyke wise as ī the booke of halkyng aforesayd are writyn and noted the termys of plesure belongyng to gentill men hauyng delite therm. In thessame maner thys booke folowyng shewith: to sych gentill personys the maner of huntyng for all maner of beestys. Wether thay be Beestys of Venery. or of chace. or Rascall. And also it shewith all the termys cō uenyent as well to the howndys as to the beestys a forsayd. And in certayn ther be many dyuerse of thaym. as it is declared in the booke folowyng.

Beestys of venery.

Whersoeuere ye fare by fryth or by felt
My dere chylde take hede how Tristram wolde you telle
How many maner beestys of venery ther were
Tystyn to youre dame and she shall you lere
Fowre maner beestys of venery there are
The first of thym is the. hert. the secunde is the hare
The woore is oon of tho. the wolff and not oon moo

Beestys of the Chace.

And where that ye cum in playne or in place
I shall you telle which be beestys of enchace
Oon of thym is the. Bucke. a nother is the Doo
The Fox and the Martron. and the Wilde Roo
And ye shall my dere chylde other beestys all.
Where so ye hem synde Rascall ye shall hem call
In fryth or in felt: or in forest I you telle.

Digitized by Google

Note here the aage of an hert.

¶ And for to speke of the hert iff ye will it lere
Ye shalt hym a. Calfe. calt at the fyrst yere
The seande yere a. Broket. so shalt ye hym calt
The therde yere a. Spayad. lerneth thus alt
The folrith yere a. Stagge. calt hym by any Way
The sithe yere a. grete Stagge. youre dame bide yolle say
The vi. yere calt ye hym an hert.
Doth so my childe Wylis ye been in quart

To knaw the hede of an hert. & that is dyuerse

¶ And of the horny that he then berith a bolde.
The fyrst hede shalt be Jugett Wyth olde
Ther in fyndyn Wer suche dyuersite.
Natheles the. vi. yere euermoore at the leest
Thou shalt Well Juge the perche of thessame beest
When he hath Auntelere With oldt any lett
Ryalt and Surrialt also there Jsett
And that in the toppe so When ye may hym keen
Then shalt ye calt hym forchyd an hert of tenne
And When he hath in the toppe. iij of the selue
Then ye shalt calt hym trochid an hert of. xij.
And afterWarde in the toppe When ther. iiij. bene
Then shalt ye calt hym sommyd an hert of. xvi.
And from. iiij. forWarde Watt so befalt
Be he neuer of so many ye shalt hym summed calt
Ryght of the nombre euyn that he is
Callith hym from. iij. forth summed Wyes
Also haue ye sele an hert hedd Weele.

An Heerde . A Beve . A Sounder . A Route.

¶ My chylde callith herdys of hert and of hynde
And of Bucke and of doo where yo hem synde
And a Beue of Roos what place thay be in
And a Sounder ye shalt of the wylde swyne
And a Rolote of Wolues where thay passin inne
So shalt ye hem calt as many as thay bene

A Littill herde . A mydyll heerd A grete heerd

¶ .yy . is a litryll herde though it be of hyndis
And . yl . is a mydyll herde to calt hym be leyndes
And . lyyy . is a grete herde calt . ye hem so
Be it hert be it hynde bucke or ellis doo

How ye shall say a gret hert ꝛ not a fair ꝛ oder

¶ A grete hert when ye hym se so shalt ye hym calt
Bot neuermore a fayre hert for no thyng that may be falt
A grete hynde a grete bucke and a fayre doo
My sonnys where ye walke calt ye hem so
So ye shulde naame such dere: and do as I yolle lere

¶ what is a beuy of Roos grete or small

¶ And sey is a beue of Roos on a walde
And . p . is a mydyll beuy full wele I it walde
A grete beuy is . yy . when thay to gedre be
And so calt hem sonnys where that ye hym se
The moore nombus than ylois : the grettez the beuy is

Digitized by Google

What is a Sounder of ſwyne grete or ſmall

¶ Thelfe make a Sounder of the Wylde ſwyne
And a medyll Sounder What place thay be inne
A grete ſounder of ſwyne . yy . ye ſhall call
For geet not this leſſion for thyng that may fall
Thynke What I ſay : my ſonne nyght and day

Of the Roo huntyng . brekyng . and drellyng

When ye hunt at the Roo then ſhall ye ſay thoore
The croſſes and treſones yolbre bolbndys byfoore
A grete Roobucke ye call hym not ſo
But a fayre Roobucke and a fayre doo
With the bolbellis and With the bloode
Relbarde ye yolbre bolbndes my ſonnys ſo goode
¶ And eche foote ye ſhall cutte in . iiii . I yolb kenne
Take the bolbellis and the bloode and do all to gedre then
Meuyth hit than to yolbre bolbndys ſo
And moche the glaadder then thay Will go
That to yolbre bolbndes a relbarde is call
For hit is eeten on the grolbnde and on the ſkynne dalle
¶ The Roo ſhall be herdeled by veneri I Weene
The . ij . forther legges the hede layde by tbene
And take oon ender legge vp I yolb pray
And that oder forder legge right as I yolb ſay
vppon the oder forder legge booth ye hem pytte
And With that other forther legge vp ye hem knytte
Don thys maner thus When ye haue Wrought
All hoole to the Reeben then hit ſhall be brought
Sane that yolbre bolbndes eete : the bolbillis and the feete.

Now of thage & undoyng of the boore

Now to speke of the boore the fyrst yere he is
A pygge of the Sounder called ale haue I blis
The secunde yere an hogge and so shall he be
And an hoggesteze when he is of yeres . iij .
And when he is of . iiij . yere a beore shelt he be
From the Sounder of the swyne then departith he
A Synguler is he so: for a lone he will goo.
When ye haue slayn the boore and will do hym right
Me shall vndo hym vnslayne when he shall be dight
Xxx . bredys and . ij . of hym ye shall make
By the lawe of venery as I dare vnder take
Thurgh yolowe houndys by strength eff that he be dede
They shall haue the wolwyllis boyle with the brede
Cast vppon the growndе ther the boore was slayne
And that is calde a Relwarde so hunteris it sayne
vppon the erth so haue I blis: for that so eeten is

Now of the hare .

Now for to speke of the hare my sonnys seuereli
That beest kyng shall be calde of all venery
For all the fayre spekyng and blabyng leif here
Commyth of sechyng and fyndyng of the hare
For my leif chyldre I take it on honde
He is the mezuelleſt beſt that is m ony londe
For he fymaes and cowis and Roungeth euermoore
And beeath talow and grys: and a boue teeth hath he foore
And other while he is male: and so ye shall hym fynde
And other while female and kyndelis by kynde

Digitized by Google

¶ And when he is female and kyndelis hym with
In .iij. degrees he hem berith or he with hem thryn
Too rough and .ij. smoth who wille hem se
And ij. knottis also that kyndelis wille be
When he is female so telle I my tale.

¶ The rewarde for hawndys.

¶ When youre hawndis by strenath hath done her to dede
The hunter shalle rewarde hym then with the hede
With the shulderis and the sides and with the bowellis alle
And alle thyngis with in the bombe saue onli the galle
The paunche also: yeue hem noon of thoo.
Wich rewarde when oon the erth it is calde.
With alle goode huntaris the .halow. it is calde
Then the loynes of the hare loke ye not forgete
But bryng hem to the kechyn for the lordis meete
And of this ilke hare speke we no mare.

Wiche beestes shall be slayne & wich stripte

¶ Now to speke of the bestes when thay be slayne
How many be strypte and how many be slayne
Alle that bere skyne and talow and rounge leue me
Shalle be slayne sase the hare for he shalle stripte be
And alle that berith greece: and piles ther vppon
Euer shalle be strypte when thay be rondon
On theyr maner play: thus ye shalle say.

Digitized by Google

Whiche beestis shall be reride with the lymer.

¶ My dere sonnys echeon nowe Wille I yowe lere
How many maner beestys as With the lymere
Shalle be wrerydde in fryth or in felde
Booth the hert and the bucke and the woore so Wilde
And alle other beestys that huntid shalle be
Shalle be sought and founde With Ratchis so fre
Say thus I yowe tolde: my childer so tolde

The discreuyng of a Bucke.

¶ And ye speke of the Bucke the fyrst yere he is
A fadone, sowkyng on his dam say as I yowe Wis
The secunde yere a preket. the. iij yere a sowrelle
A sowre at the. iiij. yere the twoothe I yowe telle
The. v. yere calle hym a Bucke of the fyrst hede
The. vi. yere calle hym a Bucke and do as I you rede

Of the hornys of a Bucke.

¶ The hornys of a grete Bucke or he so be
Most be summyd as I say herkenyth to me
Too braunchis first palmyd he moste haue
And. iiij. avaunceres the soth iff ye Wille saue
And ppiij. espeleres and then ye may hym calle
Where so ye be a grete Bucke I telle yowe alle

Of the Roobucke.

¶ And iff ye of the Roobucke Wille kenowe the fame
The first yere he is a kyde sowkyng on his dame

Digitized by Google

The seconde yere he is a gerle: and so he sicke alle
The thirde yere an hemule loke ye hym calle
Robucke of the first hede he is at the iiij. yere
The .v. yere a Roobucke hym calle I yolde lere
At saynt andrewe day his hornes he lese caste
In moore or in moos he hidyth hem faste
So that no man may hem sone fynde
Ellys in certayn he woos not his kynde
¶ At saynt Jamys day where so he go
Then shalle the Roobucke gendre with the Roo
And so boldely there as ye durne
Then is he calde a Roobucke goyng in his turne
And iff ye may a Robucke sle with olde any sayle
And ye fynde that hede grece at his tayle
As sum Robuckys haue when ye hit fynde
Then shalle ye vere it as ye do of hert and of hynde
Also the Robucke as hit is beele kyde
At holyrode day he gooth to Ryde.
And wsith the bit: when he may gete hit

Now of the hert and of the hynde.

¶ Sonnys of the hert and the hynde leene yit ye may
Ther thay drawe to the herde at holi roode day
To the steepe then thay goon ythe hole day at noon
Which steepe thay wsen my childer I yolde say
Till hit be Mydesomere at the last day
The cause of the steepe is to beere hym fro the flee
Who so commyth to that place may se hit with his ighe
An other thyng thay wse my childe also
The same seson of the yere to soyle to go

Digitized by Google

Of the cryȳng of theys beestys.

¶ An hert beloboys and a bucke gwnys I synde
And ich Roobucke certayne tellis by tynde
The noyes of theyes beestys thus ye shalt calle
For pryde of theyre make thay vsen hit alle
Say chylde Wyere ye goo: yolore dame taght you so

Merke well theys seasonys folowyng.

¶ Tyme of grece begynnyth at mydsomer day
And tylt holi Roode day lastyth as I you say
¶ The seson of the fox fro the Natiuyte
Tylt the annunciacion of olore lady fre
¶ Seson of the Robucke at Estre shalt begynne
And tilt mychelmas lastith nygh or the blynne
¶ The seson of the Roo begynnyth at Michelmas
And hit shalt endure and last vntilt Candilmas
¶ At Michelmas begynnyth huntyng of the hare
And lastith tilt mydsomer thez nyst no man hit spare
¶ The seson of the Wolfe is in iche cuntre
At the seson of the fox and euermore shalt be
¶ The seson of the boore is from the Natiuyte
Tilt the purification of olore lady so fre
For at the Natiuyte of olore lady swete
He may synde Wyere he goth vnder his feete
Goeth in Wodys and feldis corne and odez fruite
Wben he afterz foode makyth any sute
Crabbys and acornys and nottis thez thay gnolb
Halbys and hoppes and other thyngs ynolb
That tilt the purification lastys as ye se
And makyth the Boore in seson to be
For Wbile that fruite may: last his time is neuez past

Digitized by Google

Of the huntyng of the haare

NOw to speke of the haare how all shall be wroght
When she shall hath hounds be foundyn and soght
The first worde to the houndis that the hunt shall owt pit
Is at the kenell doore when he openys it
That all may hym here: he shall say anone.
For his holondes wolde com to hastely
That is the first worde my sonne of venery
And when he hath couplyd his houndes ychoon
And is forth with hem to the felde goon
And when he has of cast his coupples at wille
Then shall he speke and say his holondes till
Hors de couple auaunt se auaunt tibre so
And then So ho so ho. thries and no mo
And then say. Sa sa cy auaunt So holo I you pray
And iff ye se yolore holondes haue goode will to renne
And dralo a waywarde fro yold say as I yold kenne
Here holo amy. agayne hym alt so
Then. Sweff mon amy sweff. to make hym soft go
And iff any synde of the haare thez he hath bene
And he highte Richez or Gemounde thuo to hym leene
Opes a Gemounde le vaillant. and I shall you awolde
Or quida twy la colwarde on la court colde
That Gemonde the worthe with owt any faple
That wenyth to synde the colward with the short taple

AND iff ye se where the haare at pasture hath bene
Iff hit be in the tyme of the corne grene
And iff yolore houndes chace weell at yolore wille
Then. iij. motes shall ye blaw wooth lolore and shille

Here oon and there an other there he pasturyde has
Then say . illoques illoques in the ſame place
So say to hem in kynde : vnto tyme that ye hir fynde
¶ And then caſt a ſigne aft the feld a bowte
To ſe at hir pasture where ſhe hath be in or oute
Or at hir forme for gladli to be ſhe is not lefe
Her ſhe hath pasturid in tyme of releſe
And any hounde fynd or muſyng of hir mace
Her as ſhe hath byne and is goon out of that place
Ha ſe touz cy eſt ell . ſo ſhalt ye ſay
venez auez ſo holde ſa . alſo lowde as ye may
Sa cy ad eſte ſo holde . after that
Sa ſa cy auaunt . and therof be not lat
And when ye ſe vnto the playne her at the laſt
In felde or in erabuſt londe : or in to the wode paſt
And yolore hounde with fynde of her ther then
Say . la douce amy la eſt a . and ſo as I yolde hen
That is to ſay ſwete frende : ther is he come lolde
For to dry here · and ther with ye ſhalt ſay ſo holde
Illoques ey douce ey vaylaunt ſo holde ſo holde . then thou
Thus may yē nolde dere ſonnys lerne of venery
And when ye come ther as ye trolde be with dwelt
And ſo ſemeth to yolde welt then ſay as I yolde telt
La douce la eſt a venez . for to dwelt thoore
And therwith . iij . ſoholde . ſay ye no moore
And iff it ſemes wolt yolde to fynde alt in fere
And when ſo to do then ſay . douce holde here holde here
Holde here douce holde here holde here be ſittys
So ſhalt ye ſay my chyldre and for no thyng letty
Alt maner beſtys that euer chaſede wore
Haue oon maner of worde . ſo holde . and no more

Digitized by Google

To fulfill or ſonfill eche maner of chaas
The hunt euermoore in his mowth that worde he haas
And iff yowre houndys at a chaſe renne ther ye hunt
And the beeſt begynne to renne as hertis be wont
Or for to hanylon as doos the fox with his gyle
Or for to croſſe as the Roo doth oder while
Oder dweell ſo that yowre honndys cannot owte go
Then ſhall ye ſay. hoo ſa amy ſa ſa
A compleyn ſa arere ſo howe . ſich is the play
And ſohowe as moch is as ſa howe to ſay
Bot for . ſohowe is ſhort in ſpeche when it is brought
Therfore ſay we . ſohowe bot ſa howe ſay we noght
And iff yowre houndis chaſe at hert or at haare
And thay renne at defaute thus ye ſhall ſay thare
Jey ſohowe aſſayne aſſayne ſton how
Sa aſſayne arere ſohowe theis wordes and no moo
And iff yowre houndes renne weell at fox or at doo
And ſo fayle at defaute ſay thus ferther or ye goo
Ho ho ore ſwef aluy douce a luy . that thay here
Ho hoy aſſayne aſſayne ſa arere
So howe ſo howe venez a couplez . and do as J yowe kenne
The moore worſhyp may ye haue among alle meme
Yowre craftes let be kydde : and do as J yowe bydde
Alle my ſonnys in ſame : and thus may ye konne of game

The boost that the mayſter hunter makythe to his man now here foloyng ye may here .

The mayſter to his man makyth his Roys
That he knowith be kynde what the hert doys
At huntyng euermoore when he goys

Digitized by Google

Quod the man to his maiſter that were good loore
For to knaw what he doos the houndes before
What dooth he mayſter quod the man
He dooth quod he ouyn as thou mayſt ſe
Berkyth .and ſo dooth no beeſt but he
Wben berkyth he quod the man what is that to ſay
With his feete he oppynys the erth ther he gooth a way
What is the cauſe quod the man maiſter I the pray
That the hert he ſoore the houndes when thay hym hunt ay
That then to the Ryuer he wellis for to goon
Quod the maiſter to the man ther ar cauſes toon

For .ii. cawſes the hert deſirith to the Ryuer . ſ
note wele theis termys folowyng deſcende ſ oder

Con cauſe for the Ryuer deſcende he is ay
And ſo is he to the water when he takith the way
Why calliſt thou hym . deſcende . mayſter I the pray
For he payris of is myght the ſooth I the ſay
A nother is to the water whi he gooth other whyle
The houndes that hym ſelben to founde to begyle
Yit of this hert quod his man maiſter wolde I ken
In to the water when he leppys what he makes then
He proferith quod the mayſter and ſo ye ſhall ſay
For he wot not hym ſelfe yit how he will a way
Whether ouer the water he will for paſſe
Or turne ayen theſſame way ther he fyrſt was
Therfore hit is proffre as theys hunteris ſayne
And Reproffer iff theſſame way he turne ayene

At that oder side of the Water iff he cop sterte
Then shalt ge call hit the. soule. of the hert
And that is for the Water of his leggee Beste
Dollone in to the steppis ther fallyn of his fete
Ayen the Water his Way ceuen iff he hent
Then brekyth he Water ther to take yolb tent
And iff With the Water go algate yolb hit shalt
Defoulant the Water an hert so hym calt

Now of the Nomblis nieghe wele the termys

A The man to his mayster spekyth full blyth
Off the nomblys of the hert that he Wolde hym kith
Hath mony endys ther shalt be hem With mne
Quod the mayster bot oon thyk nor thynne
And that is bot the Sargilon. to speke of alk bi dene
And alk theys oder. crokes andy Roundulis. bene

The Auaunceis. the Forcheis

AWit Wolde I Wit and thalb Woldest me leere
The crokes and the Roundellis of the Nomblys of ye dere
Oon croke of the Nomblis lyth euermoore
Under the throote bolle of the beest be foore
That callid is. aaaunceis Who so can hem keye
And the hyndermost parte of the Nomblis thene
That is to sey the Forchis that liggyn euen bifbene
The. y. theys of the beest that oder crokis cuene

Digitized by Google

In the Mydeſt that callid is the wondeſt alſo
For the ſides wolnde a wolde come it is fro
My deere ſonnys bolde: ſay of game I thus yow tolde

¶ Mit Bolde I Bitt maiſter Bhi theys houndes alk
Bayen and cryen Bhen thay hym ceche ſhalk
For thay Bolde haue helpe that is thayr ſtrylk
For to ſlee the beeſt that thay renne tylk
¶ Telk me mayſter quod the man What is the ſtrylk
Bhy the haare Boolde ſo fayne renne ayeneſt the hilk
Quod the mayſter for hyr leggys be ſhorter be ſoore
Then be hynde: that is the ſtrylk of poore
¶ What is the cauſe quod the man y^t men ſay of y^t beeſt
That the haare ſittith aye Bhen ſhe takyth hyr reeſt
And oder beeſtys ly: as communeli men ſayne
For .ij. cauſes quod the mayſter I telk the playne
Ony is for ſhe hurcles vppon hir houghes ay
And alk other beeſtys: can the ſide to the gwlnde lay
An oder cauſe ther is and that is noo lees
For ſhe bereith both ſelbet and pure greece

¶ Pit Bolde I mayſter quod the man fayne Bitt more
Bhere lyth the fuet of the haare be hynde or before
Ouer the loyne quod the mayſter of iche haare tholb take
By elbin the tayle and the chyne euen oon the backe
¶ Pit Bolde I mayſter quod the man thers at the leer
What tholb Balkeſt in the felde Bith thy lymeer
Ther as an hert paſturred hath: or y^t tholb hym ſe
To knadbe faatt or lene Bithes that he be
I can quod the mayſter Berk telk the thys caas
Bhaite Bele Bhere he bay: and Bhere he fumeyed haas

Molold and englaymede iff that it be
Then is he fatt I the telle leene theyes of me
And iff it be booth blacke and harde and clene
Then he is meegre larbre and leene
And of thys like thyng iff thold leue not me
Take heede in the Wyntre and then thold may it se

¶ Wit mayster of the haare sayn Wolde I Wit moore
What he dooth When he gooth the holondys before
The forth and vorth ther he gooth a Way
Prycketh and reprycketh the sooth for to say
But What is that quod the man When thay so doone
That shalle I quod the mayster telle the fulle soone
In the feeldes Where he gooth no Ways keene
Ther he forth When he steppyth and hit may not be seene
And after When he wobbleth and turnyth agaynne
Then he vesoorth as goode hunteres saynne
And When he rennyth in the Way dry or Weete
Then men may fynde fostaly of clees or of feete
That prycketh the haare aye When he dooth soo
And reprycketh then iff he agaynne goo

¶ Maister yit quod the man What is this to say
A vauntèllay a lay . and a Relay .
That shalle I telle the quod he : for a littill byzete
When the holondys ar set : an hert for to mete
And other hym chasen and folowyn to take
Then alle the Relais thold may vppon hem make
Even at his comyng yf thold lett thy holondys goo
While the odes that be behynde fer arn hym froo
That is . a vauntelay . and so thold shalle hit calle
For thay are than fer before thoos odes holondes alle

And an hynderyng greete alle oder vntalle
For thay may not that day nomore ſelue at Wille
And holde thyn houndes ſtylle iff that thou ſo do
Tille alle the houndes that be behynd be cum therto
Than let thyn houndes alle to gedr goo
That called is an allay . and looke thou ſay ſo
And that hynderyng is yit to them that be behynde
For the reſtede Wille ouergo the Weye by hynde
A relay is after When the houndes ar paſt
Fer be fore With the hert that hiet hem faſt
To let thyn houndes fer after hem goon
And that is then a forthering to hem echoon
For and thyn houndes haue ouertake thees oder bi deſtres
Then ſhalle they alle folue hym of oon ſwefines

What is a forloyng .

QWil mayſter Wolde I fayn thus at yow leere
What is a forloyng for that is goode to here
That ſhalle I ſay the quod he the ſoth at leſt
When thy houndes in the Wode ſechyn any beeſt
And the beeſt is ſtoke away owt of the fryth
Or the houndes that thou haſt meten therWith
And any other houndes before: than may With hem mele
Thees oder houndes arn then forloyned I the hele
For the beſte and the houndes arn ſo fer before
And the houndes be hynde be Weye and ſoore
So that thay may not at the beſt cum at ther Wille
The houndes before forloyne hem and that is the ſkylle
Thay be ay ſo fere before to me iff thou Wilt truſt
And thys is the forloyne leere hit iff thou luſt

Digitized by Google

Wiche thre thynges cause the houndes to endure

¶ Yit wolde I weete mayster iff it ware thy will
When thyn houndes renne an hert wntill
And ay the forther they goo the gladder thay bene
For .iij. causes quod he oft tyme is sene
Oon is when the hert rennyes fast on a rese
He sweteth that hit rennyth dowene thorogh owt his clees
The houndes when thay fynde of that it is swete
Then ar thay leuer to renne and lother to lete
An oder cause when the hert ny no moore may
Then wilt he white froth caste ther he gooth a way
When thyn houndes fynde of that then ar thay glad
In hope thay shalt hym haue and renne so rad
The .iij. cause is of the hert when he is nygh dede
Then he castyes owt of his mowth froth and blade rede
The houndes knawb that he shalt be take soone than
And euer the forther they goo the gladdir they renne
Thes ar thy causes .iij. that causes hem gladde to be

Wich best a slau houndе takis as sone as aswift

¶ What weest yit mayster I ay it for non yit
That mooste hole alt houndes rennen wntill
And also sone the slowyst shalt hym ouer take
As the swyftist shalt do what way so euer he take
That weest a Bausyn hight a Brok or a Gray
Thees .iij. names he hath the sooth for to say
And this is cause therof : for he wilt by kynde
Go thorugh thornys a way the thykest he may fynde
Ther as the swyftist houndes may no forther goo
Then the slowest of foote be he neuer so thro

Why the hare sumays and croteis.

Tyit mayster Wolde I Wele Whi that men sayn
That the haare sumays and cwteys booth playn
And alle other maner bestys that huntid be
Femyon or fenon as Be Wele hit se
That shalle I Weell telle the quod the mayster then
For Why that he semays and crotis Walle I ben
He semaith for he berith talow. this is no lees
And he cwteis men sayn for he breath grees
And Roukis on his boughis Whan he lettis it go
And bestys of such kynde synde Wer no moo
Holde mony bestis semayen mayster sayn I Wolde lere
And hold many fenon that Ware goode to here
Alle this to telle quod the mayster I holde hit wot lihgt
Alle bestis that beere talow and stonde vpright
Semayen Whan thay do so say as I the leme
And alle oder fenon that wolden wilne theme.

How mony maner bestis of venery releue

Holde many maner bestis yit mayster me telle
Off venery releuen by fryth or by ffelle
To this quod the mayster I shalle the answare
Off alle bestis wot. ij. the hert and the haare
From the Annunciacion of oure lady day
The hert then releues the sooth for to say
Tille saynt Petris day and paule. and the haare right:
From the Purificacon of oure lady bright:
Tille the translacion releuys: leue ye me
Off saynt Thomas tide of Cauntirburie.

Digitized by Google

To vndo the wylde Boore

¶ Wit my chylde of the boore for to ſpeke moore
When he ſhall be vndoon I tell yow be foore
ppp$\bar{\imath}$. bredis ye ſhall of hym make
Now Wil yow my ſonnys Wit Weere ye ſhall them take
The fyrſt of them is the hede What euer be falle
An oder is the coler and ſo ye ſhall hit calle
The ſheldys on the ſholderis: therof ſhall .$\bar{\imath}$. be
Then eyder ſide of the ſkyne depertid in .$\bar{\imath}\bar{\imath}$.
The preſtellis and the gambons depte them .$\bar{\imath}$.
And .$\bar{\imath}$. feletys he hath: forgete not thoo
Then take is leggys and is feete & ſhe With yowre fleght
For they ſhall of his bredys be counted for .vi$\bar{\imath}$.
Departath the chyne in .$\bar{\imath}\bar{\imath}\bar{\imath}$. peces and nomoo
And take ther yowre bredis .ppp. and .$\bar{\imath}$.
And fayre put the grece When it is take a Way
In the bledder of the boore my chylde I yow pray
For hit is a medecyne: for mony maner pyne

¶ how ye ſhall breeke an Hert.

And for to ſpeke of the hert While We thynke oo$\tilde{n}$
My chylde fyrſt ye ſhall hym ſue When he ſhall te vndoo$\tilde{n}$
And that is for to ſay or euer ye hym dyght
With in his olone hornys to lay hym vpright
At theſſay cut hym that lordys may ſee:
A noon fat or leen Whder that he bee
Then cut of the coddis the bely euen froo
Or ye begynne hym to flee: and then ſhall ye goo

Digitized by Google

At chaulis: to begynne assone as ye may
And slyttith hym downe euen to thassay
And fro thassay euen downe the bele shalt ye slide
To the pissith ther the coode was a way kytt
Then slit the lyfte legge euen first before
And then the lyfte legge by hynde or ye do moore
And thees oder legges vppon the right syde
vppon thesame maner slyt ye that tyde
To goo to the chekys looke ye be preste
And so fleeth hym downe euen to the breste
And so fleeth hym forth right vnto thessay
Euen to the place where the coode was ait a way
Then fleeth thesame vyse alle that oder syde
But let the taylle of the beest stikk ther oon byde
Than shalt ye hym vndo my chylde I yold (Rede
Ryght vppon his aldone skynne and lay hit on brede
Take hede of the cuttyng of thesame deer
And begynne fyrst to make the Erbere
Than take oldt the shulderis. and slyttith a noon
The baly to the syde from the corbyn bone
That is corbyns fee: at the deeth he will be
Then take oldt the selder that hit be not lafte
For that my chylde is good for lechecraft
Than put thyn honde softely vnder the breste bone
And ther shalt ye take oldt therber a noon
Than put oldt the paunche. and from the paunche taas:
A way rightly the (Rate sich as he haas
Hoole it with a syngre. do as I yold kenne
And with the blood and the grece fillith hit theme
Looke threde that ye haue and nedelle therto:
For to sell it with alle or ye moore do.

Digitized by Google

The ſmale guttis than ye ſhall owt pyt
From hem take the mall . forȝet not it .
Than take owt the leuer . and lay hit on the ſkynne
And after that the bledder with owt moore dynne
Than dreſſt the Nombles : firſt that ye take
Downe the avaunces kerue that cleues to the necke
And downe with the bolthwote put them a noon
And kerue vp the fleſh ther vp to the hach woñ
And ſo forth the fillittis that ye vp aȝere
That falluth to the nombles . and ſhall be ther :
With the neres alſo and ſelvit : that ther is
Euen to the mydrif that vppon hym is
Than take downe the mydrif from the ſides hoole
And haue vp the nombles hoole by the bolt thwote
In thyn hond than them holde . and looke and ſe
That all that longith them to . to geder that thay be
Than take them to thy brodir to holde for traſt
Whylis thow them dowblyſt and dightis as the liſt
Than a way thy lyghtis • and oon the ſkynne them lay
To a byde the quere my chylde I yow pray .
Than ſhall ye ſlyt the ſlough ther as the hert lith
And take a way the Eres from it and by ſlyth
For ſich hertis hath his hert : ay it vppon
As men may ſe in the beeſt when he is vndoñ
And in the myddis of the hert a woon ſhall ye fynde
Looke ye yeue hit to a lorde . and chylde be kynde
For hit is kynde for mony malydies
And in the myddis of the hert euermore it lies
Than ſhall ye kyt the ſkyrtis the teeth euen fro
And after the Ragge woñ cuttis euen alſo
The forthis : and the ſydes euen betwene
And looke that yolowe kanſe ay whettyd bene

Than arne vp the forches . and frote them with bloode
For to saue the grece . so do men of goode
Than shalt ye cut the nek the fydes euen fro
And the hede fro the nek auntyth also
The toong the brayn the paunch and the necke
When thay wash be weell with watez of the becke :
The smale guttis to the lightis in the dezys :
A boue the hert of the beest when thow them veris
With all the blode that ye may gete and wyn
All to gedez shalt be take . and layde oon the skyn .
To geue youre hounds . that callid is Ʒ wis :
The quyrre . a boue the skyn for it etyn is
And who dightis hym so by my counsayle
Shall haue the leste shuder for hys trauayle .
And the right shulder where so euer he be
Neueth to the fostez for that is his fee
And the lyuez also of thessame beest
To the fosterys knaue yeueth at the leest
The nombles trussith in the skynne . and hardelt hym fast
The sides and the forches to gedez that thay last
With thendez legges . be woon so it shalt
Than bryng it hom . and the skynne with all
The nombles . and the hornes . at the lordis yate
Than boldely blow the price thartat .
Now play for to mynne . Or that ye come Ynne .

Explicit Dam Julyans
Barnes in hez boke of huntyng .

Digitized by Google

Bestis of the chace of the swete kewte & stinkīg

There be bestys of the chace: of the swete kewte. And tho be the Bucke. the Doo. the Beere. the Reynd the Elke. the Spycard. the Otre. and the Martron.

¶ There be bestis of the chace of the stynkyng kewte And thay be the Roobucke. and the Roo. the Fulmard. the Fyches. the Baude. the Graye. the Foy. the Squyrell. the Whitrat. the Sol. and the Pulcatte.

¶ The namys of diuerse maner houndis

Theis be the namys of houndes. First ther is a Grehownd a Bastard. a Mengrell. a Mastyfe. a Lemor. a Spanyell. Rachys. Kenettys. Tewtres. Bocheris houndes. Mydyng dogges. Tryndeltayles. and Prikherid curris. and smale ladies popis thai bere a Way the flees and dyueris smale falbtis.

¶ The proprieteis of a goode Grehound.

A Grehounde shulde be hedd like a Snake. and neckedy like a Drake. Foted like a Rat. Tayled like a Rat. Sydd lyke a Teme. Thyned like a Beme

¶ The first yere he most lerne to fede. The seaund yere to feld hym lede. ¶ The .iij. yere he is felow lyke. The .iiij. yere ther is noon sike ¶ The .v. yere he is good Inough The .vi. yere he shall holde the plough ¶ The vij yere he Will assayle: grete bukkys for to assayle. ¶ The viij. yere lixladill. The .ix. yere carcsadyll. ¶ And When he is com

myn to that yere : haue hym to the tanner. ¶ For the beſt
hoſonde that euer bitte hade · at. xy. yere he is ſuſt bade

The proprietees of a goode hors.

A Goode hors ſhulde haue. xv. proprietees. and condicions.
y' is to wit. iij. of a man. iij of a woman. iij. of a foy
iij. of an haare and. iij. of an aſſe.
Off a man bolde prudde and hardy.
Off a woman fayre breſtid faire of here & eſy to lip vppon.
Off a foy a faire tayle ſhort eris with a goode trot.
Off an hare a grete eyghe a dry hede. and beſt renning
Off an aſſe a bigge chyne a flatte lege. and goode houe.

Beſt trauelid women ner beſt trauelid hors bez neu goode

¶ Aryſe erly. ſerue god deuoutely. and the world beſily doo
thy werke wiſely. yeue thyn almeſe ſecretly Go by the way ſad;
ly. Anſwere the peple demurely. Go to thy mete appetitely.
Sit there at diſcretely. Of thy conge be not to liberall· Aryſe
ſe therfrom tempatly. Goo to thy ſoper ſobrely And to thy
bedde merely. Be in thyn Inne Jocundly ſpeke thy loue du
ly. And ſlepe ſurely.

Merke wele theys. iiij thynges.

¶ There be. iiij thynges principall to be dread of euy wiſe man
The firſt is the cauſe of oure holy fadez the pope.
The ſeconde is the indignacion of a prince Quia indignacion
regis vel principis mors eſt
The thridde is the fauor or the wirk of a Juge.
The iij. is Sclaunder & the mutacion of a comynalte.

Digitized by Google

Who that makith in Cristynmas a dog to his larder..
And in March a Sold to is gardyner.
And in May a fole of a Whise mannys counselt.
He shalt neuer haue goode larder. fayre gardyn. Ner Be
le keppyd colloncelt.

¶ Fer from thy Kynnysmen keste the.
Wrath not thy neighborys nept the.
In a goode corne cuntre threste the.
And sitte dolne Robyn and rest the.

Who that byldys his hous alt of salowes.
And prickyth a blynde hors ouer the falowys.
And suffrith hys Wyfe to seche mony halowys.
God sende hym the blysse of euerlastyng galowis.

If theis be not directid then go thei at aventyr
¶ Ther be iiii. thynges sutt harde for to knawb.
Wyche Way that thay Will drawe.
The first is the Wayes of a yong man.
The secunde the cours of a vessayll in the see.
The thridde of an Edder or a serpent sprent.
The. iiii. of a foWle sittyng on any thyng.

Too Wyues in oon hous. too cattys and oon mous:
Too dogges and oon bon: theis shalt neu accorde i oon.

Who that mannyth hym With his Kynne.
And closith his croofte Wyth cheritrees.
Shalt haue many begges brokynne.
And also sutt lytyll goode sezures.

Digitized by Google

The Compaynys of beestys and fowlys.

A Herde of Hertis
an herde of alle maner
an Herde of Swannys
an Herde of Cranys
an Herde of Corlewys
an Herde of Rennys
an Herde of harlottys
a Nye of ffesaunttys
a Beuy of Ladies
a Beuy of Roos
a Beuy of Quaylis
a Sege of heronnys
a Sege of betouris
a Sorte or a sute of malardis
a Muster of Pecockys
a Walke of Snytis
a Congregacion of peple
an Exaltyng of Larkis
a Watche of Nyghtingalis
an hoost of men
a ffelischippyng of yomen
a Cheme of Goldefynches
a Cast of Grete
a Couple or a payer of Cotallis
a ffligh of Doues
an vnkyndenes of Rauenes
a Clateryng of choughes
a Dissimulacon of bredis
a Route of Knyghtis
a Pride of Lionys
a Sleuth of Beeris
a Cete of Graies
a Bery of Conyis
a Ruthes of Martronys
a Besynes of ferettis
a Brace of grehoundis of .ij
a Lece of Grehoundis of .iij
a Couplit of spaynellis
a Couple of rennyng houndis
a Litter of Welpis
a Kyndylt of yong Cattis
a Synguler of Boris
a Dryft of tame Swyne
an Harrasse of horse
a Ragg of coltis or a Rake
a Baren of Mulis
a Trippe of Gete
a Trippe of haaris
a Gagle of gees
a Brode of hennys
a badelyng of Dokis
a Moonpacens of Pyes
a State of Pryncis
a Thongh of barons
a Prudens of wiferis
a Supplyte of Nunnys
a Scole of clerkes
a Doctryne of doctoris

a Conuēyng of prechours
a Sentence of Juges
a Dampnyng of Jurrours
a Diligens of Messangers
an Obeisians of Suauntis
a Sete of Wsshers
a Draught of Boteleris
a Powde shelbyng of taloris
a Tempans of Coks
a Stalke of Fosteris
a Boost of Saudiours
a Laughter of Osteloris
a Glosyng of Tauerneris
a Malepertnes of pedlers
a Thraue of Thwshers
a Squatte of Dalbers
a Fightyng of beggers
an vntwuth of Sompners
a Melody of Harpers
a Pauuerty of pypers
a Sotelty of Sergeauntis
a Taberuacle of bakers
a Drifte of fishers
a Disgysyng of Taylours
a Bleche of Soldiers
a Smere of Corpours
a Clustre of Grapys
a Clustre of chorlis
a Rage of Maydnys
a Rasult of Knaues
a blush of boyes
an vncredibilite of Cocoldis
a Coup of partrichis
a Sprynge of Telis
a Dessert of Napkyns
a fatt of Woodcockis
a Congregacon of Sheuers
a Couert of coots
a Duett of Turtillis
a Titengis of Pies
an Ost of Spaudis
a Swarme of bees
a cast of haukis of ye bour. ij
a Lece of thessame haukis. ij
a Flight of Gosshaukes
a Flight of Swalowes
a Wedyng of Rookes
a Murmuracon of stares
a Route of Wolues
a Lepe of Lebardis
a Shrewdnes of Apis
a Skulke of Thwys
a skulke of ffoxis
a Nest of Rabettis
a Labor of Mollis
a Mute of hounde
a Kenett of Rachis
a Sute of a lyam
a Cowardnes of curris
a Soundre of Wilde Swyne
a Swde of Mares
a Chase of Asses

Digitized by Google

a Drowe of Mete
a fflocke of Shepe
a Gagle of Women
a Hepe of chyldremys
a Multiplieng of huſbondis
a Pontificalite of prelatis
a Dignyte of chanonys
a Charge of curatis
a Diſcrecion of Preſtis
a Saulke of freris
a bhomynable ſight of mõnis
a Sowle of ffyſh
a Example of Maiſteris
an Obſuans of Pelmytis
an Eloquens of labeyeris
an Epecucion of Officerys
a faith of Marchandis
a puiſion of ſtelwardy of houſ
a Kerff of Panteris
a Credens of Selueris
an vnbrelbyng of Kerueris
a Safegarde of Porteris
a Blaſt of hunteris
a Threteryng of courteyeris
a Pwmple of Tapſteris
a Lyeng of pardeneris
a Miſbeleue of paynteris
a Laſh of Carteris
a Soldyng of Remſteris
a Wonderyng of Tynkeris
a Waylwardnes of haylwardis
a Worſhip of Wateris
a Neüthriuyng of Jogoleris
a ffraunch of Mylneris
a Feſtre of Silueris
a Goryng of Bochouris
a Trynket of Conueſeris
a Plocke of Shoumeris
a Dronkſhip of Cobleis
a Sculke of ſopis
a Cluſtre of Nonis
a Rage of the teethe
a Raſcalt of Bopes
a Diſworſhip of Seruis

Explicit

HEre folow the dew termys to speke of breek-
yng or drellyng of dyuerse beestis and fowlis &c
And thesame is shewed of certayn fyllhes.

HEre brokemc.
A Goose vered
a Pigge hedde and spedde
a Capon salbsede
a Chycon frussyd
a Cony vnlaciedde
a Crane displayde
a Curlew vnioyntede
a ffesaunt alet
a Quayle kyngged
a plouer Mynsed
a Pegeon thyghed
Swalowe leechyd
a Swanne lyfte
a Lambe shuldride
a Ride shuldride
an Hen spoylede
a Malarde vnbrasid
an Heron dysmembrid
a Pecocke disfigured
a Beture vntachid
a Partrich alet
a Raale brestyde
a Wodecocke thyghed
an Egge Tyred
a ffyre Tymbered

NOw of fyllhes

A Salmon Chyvred
a Pyke splatted
an Hadocke sided
a Chruen fynned
a Sole loyned
a Gurnarde chyned
a Tenche salbced
an Ele trousoned
a Breme splayed
a Barbill tuskyd
a Trought gobettid

CYe shall say thus.

An hert Herbourghith
a Bucke lodgith
an Esquyer lodgith
a Roo beddith
a yoman beddith
an haare in her forme shul-
dryng or leenyng.
a Cony sittyng.
a Wodecocke brekyng

Here nowe folowyng shall be shewed all the Shyreys and the Bysshopryches of the realme of England And ye shall vnderstonde that the Shyres be writen before and the bisshopriches of thesame ar writ folowyng next aft and then afterward ar shewed the Prouynces of this londe.

¶ Kente.	Cauntirbury.	Rouchestre.
¶ Southesex.		Chychestre.
¶ Haampshyre.	Sutherey.	Wynchestre.
¶ Wyldeshyre.	Barkeshyre.	Salysbury.
¶ Somersete shyre.	Dorset shyre.	Bathe.
¶ Deuenshyre.	Cornewayle.	Excestur
¶ Essex.	Medelsex.	London.
¶ Northfolke.	Sutherfolke.	Norwyche.
¶ Cambrygeshyre.		Elye.

¶ Lyncolne. Huntyngdon. Northampton. Hertford. Bedford. Bokyngham. Oxynford. Lyncolne. Lyncolne

¶ Glouceter.	Worceter.	Wigorñ.
¶ Herfordshyre.	Herford.	
¶ Chesshyre. Shropshyre. ꝑte of Lãcashire.		Chester.

¶ Yorkeshire. Staffordshire. Darbishire. Notyngham shyre. and oder as parte of Lancastreshire. Yorke.

Prouynces of England.

Cauntirburi. and Yorke. Stafford. Darby Notingham. Northumberlonde. Durham. Westmerlond. Tendale. Karlile

Digitized by Google

Here in thys booke folowyng is determyned the lynage of Coote armuris: and how gentilmen shall be knowyn from vngentilt men. and how bondage began first in aungelt and after succeded in man kynde. as it is shewed in processe wothe in the childer of Adam and also of Noe. and how Noe deuyded the Worlde in. iij. partis to his. iij. sonnys. Also ther be shewyd the. ix. colowris in armys figured by the. ix. ordris of aungelis. and it is shewyd by the forsayd colowris Wych ben Worthy and Wych ben Royall. and of vigaliteis Wi; che ben noble and Wich ben excellent. And ther ben here the ver tuys of chyualry and many other notable and famowse thyn; gys to the plesure of noble personys shall be shewyd as the Wer kys folowyng Witteneses Who so euer likyth to se thaym and rede thaym Wych Were to longe now to reherse. And after theys notable thyngy aforesayde folowyth the Blasyng of all maner armys in latyn french and English.

Incipit liber armorum.

Beyng in Worthenes aarmes for to beere by the Royall blode in ordynance all nobull and gentyll men from the hyest degre to the lawyst i thys booke shall be shewed. and to deseuer Gentilnes from vngentilnes. In so moche thatt all gentilnes cummys of god of heuyn. al heuyn I Wyll begyn Where Were. p. ordris of aungelis and now stonde bot. ix. in co ote armuris of knawlege encrowned full hye With precious sto nes. Where lucifer With mylionys of aungelis owt of heuyn felt vnto helt and odyr places and ben holdyn ther in bondage. and all Where created in heuyn of gentill nature. A bonde man or a churle Wyll say all We be cummyn of adam. So lucifer With his cumpany may say all We be cummyn of heuyn. Adam the

begynnyng of man kynde was as a stokke vnspraydē and vn-flouresshed . and in the braunches is knowlegge whiche is wlun and whiche is grene .

How Gentilmen shall be knawyn from churlis & how they first began . And how Noe deuydyd the world in . iii . partit to his iii sonnys .

Now for to deuyde gentilmen from chorlis in haast it shall be preued . Ther was neuer gentilman nor churle ordenyd by kynde bot he had fadre and modre . Adam and Eue had nother fadre nor modre . and in the sonnys of Adam and Eue was found bothe gentilman and churle . By the soonnys of Adam and Eue Seth Abell and Cayn deuyded was the royall blode fro the vngentill . A brother to sley his brother ȝitrayd to the lawe where myght be more vngentelnes . By that did Cayn become a chorle and all his offspryng after hym by the cursyng of god and his olde fadre adam ¶ And Seth was made a gentilman thrwh his fadres and modris blissyng . And of the offspryng of Seth Noe come a gentilman by kynde ¶ Noe had . iij . sonnys begetyn by kynde . by the modre . ij . were named Cham and Sem . and by the fadre the thirde was namyd Jafeth . Yit in theys . iij . sonnys gentilnes and vngentilnes was founde ¶ In cham vngentilnes was founde to his olde fadre wold to disauer his preuytes and laugh his fadre to scorne ¶ Jafeth was the yongist and repreued his brodre . Than like a gentilman take myndē of Cham . for his vngentilnes he was become a chorle : and had the cursyng of god and his fadre Noe . And whan Noe awoke he sayde to Cham his sonne : knowyst nott thrwh how hit become of

Digitized by Google

Cayn Adam ſoon: and of his churliſh blode. Alle the Worlde is drowned ſaue he. viij. And now of the to begynne ſangen tilnes and a cauſe to deſtroye vs alle: vppon the hit ſhalle be & ſo I pray to god that it ſhalle falle. Now to the I gyue my curſe wycked kayteſe for eu. and I gyue to the: the north parte of the Worlde to dralbe thyn habitacion for there ſhalle it be. Where ſowth and care calde and myſchef as a churle thowh ſhalt haue. in the thirde parte of the Worlde Wich ſhalle be calde Europe that is to ſay the contre of churlys.

¶ Jaſeth eū here my ſonne thow ſhalle haue my bliſſing here i ſtede of Seth Adam ſon I make the a gentilman to the weſte parte of the Worlde. and to the occident ende: Where as Welth and grace ſhalle be. there thyn habitacion ſhalle be. to take that other therde parte of the Worlde Which ſhalle be calde aſia that is to ſay the contre of gentilmen.

¶ And Sem my ſon alſo a gentilman I the make to multipliabellis blode that ſo wykkedli Was ſlayn. the oryente thowh ſhat take that other theirde parte of the Worlde Which ſhalle be calde aſſtria. that is to ſay the contre of tempurnes.

¶ Of the offſpryng of the gentilman Jaſeth come Habraham Moyſes Aron and the profettys. and alſo the kyngh of ye right lyne of mary. of Whom that gentilman Jheſus Was borne very god and man: after his manhode Kyng of the londe of Jude & of Jues gentilman by is modre mary prynce of Cote armure.

How longe Cote armures wer begunne afore thyncarnacion of owre londe Jhelu cryſt.

Jaſeth made firſt Gargel and there in he made a balk in token

Digitized by Google

of all the World . and afterwarde . iij^m^ . yere and . xxiij . before thyncarnacion of Criste : Cote armure was made · and figurid at the sege of troye Where in gestys troianorum it teklith thatt the first begynnyng of the lalbe of armys was . the Wiche was effugured and begunne before any lalbe in the World . bott the lalbe of nature . and before the . x . cōmalbndementis of god

¶ And thys lalbe of armys was grounded vppon the . ix . ordrys of angelis in heuen encrolbned With . ix . dyuerse precious stonys of cololbris and of vertuys dyuerse · also of them ar figurid the . ix . colouris in armys . as in nolbmbre to begynne the first stone is callid Topasion

¶ Primꝰ lapis

The first stone is calde Topalion lignyfiyng golde in armys .

¶ This stone Topasion is a semy stone . and golde it is calde in armys . The vertue therof is : that the gentilman the Wiche thys stone in his cote armure berith a fare messangere in his kyngꝭ batyll shalbe . The Wich stone is refused in the angelis crolbne that was a trelbe massanger and a sure in his kyngꝭ batayll of heuen Whan they faught With Lucifer

¶ Secūdꝰ lapis

The secunde stone is cald Smaragdus a grauelly stone lignifiyng vert in armys

¶ The secunde stone is calde Smaragdus a grauell stone . q̄ vert it is calde in armys . The vertu therof is : that the gentylman the Wich in his cote armure it berith kene and hardy in his

Digitized by Google

kyngh bateſt ſhall be. the Wiche ſtone is reſerued in thaꝛchangel les cwlone that Was kene and hꝛdy in his kyngis bataile of hꝛ: uen Whan thꝛi faught With lucifeꝛ

¶ Tercius lapis
¶ And this stone is calde brusch coꝛore ī armys

¶ The thiꝛde ſtoñ is calde an Ametiſte a duſkeeli ſtoñ bruſh hit is calde in armys. The vertu thꝛof is: that he the Wich be: rith in his Coteaꝛmur that ſtone. foꝛtunable of victoꝛi ī his bi ges batayll ſhall be. the Wich ſtone is reſerued to the virtuſys cwlone that Was foꝛtunable and victoꝛiouſe in his kyngh batail of hꝛuen Whan thay faught With Lucifeꝛ

¶ Quartus lapis
¶ And this stone is calde plūbẏ coloꝛ ī armys

The .iiij. ſtone is calde a Margaꝛete a clowdy ſtone ꝓplum: by hit is calde in armys. The vertue thꝛof is. What gentilmā that ī his Coteaꝛmure that ſtone berith gꝛete goũnaunce of chi: ualꝛie in his kyngꝛs batayll he ſhall haue. the Wich ſtone is reſ ued in the poteſtatis cwlone that Was chꝛualcius of goũnaunce in his kyngꝛs batayll of hꝛuyn Whan thay faught With Lucifeꝛ

Quintus lapis
¶ A loys is calde ſinamer oꝛ ſanquine ī armys

¶ The .v. ſtoñ is calde a Loys. a ſanquine ſtone oꝛ ſinamer hit is calde in armys. The vertue thꝛof is: the gentilman thatt in his Coteaꝛmure this ſtone berith myghtifull of powꝛ in his kyngꝛs batayll ſhall be. the Wich ſtone Was reſerued in domina

Digitized by Google

cionys cwlone that was myght full of powere in his kyngys ba-
tayll of heuyn whan thei faught with Lucifer

Sextus lapis

¶ And thys stone is calde gowlys in armys

¶ The . vi . stone is calde a Ruby a redly stone . gowlys
it is calde in armys . the vertue therof is . the gentylman that i
his Cotearmure that stone berith hote and full of corage in his
kyngys batayll shall be . the wich stone is reserued in the princi
patis cwlone that was hote brinnyng as fire in his kyngys ba-
tayll of heuyn whan thay faught with Lucifer

¶ Septimꝰ lapis

¶ A blue stone it is & it is cald asure i armys

The . vij . stone is calde a Saphyre a bleu stone Asure hit
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . the gentilman that in
his Cotearmure berith that stone : Wyse and vertues in his Ser
kyng in his kyngh batayll shall be . the wich is reserued to twoꝰ
cwlone that was wyse and vertues in his kyngys batayll of he
uyn whan they faught with Lucifer

Octauꝰ lapis

¶ This stone is blake and it is called Sabull

¶ The . viij . stoñ is a Dyamond a blake stone . Sable it
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . What gentilman that i
his Cotearmure thatt stone berith : durabull & vnfaynt in his
kyngys batayll he shall be . The wich stone was reserued i the
cherubyns cwlone that was durable & vnfaynt in his kyngys
batayll of heuyn . whan thay faught with Lucifer

Digitized by Google

¶ Lyg lapis

¶ A shinyng ston and is calde Siluer i armys

The .iy. stone is calde Carbuncle a shynyng stone . Silu hit is calde in armys . The vertue thewf is : That gentilman ye in his Cotearmure this stone berith . fulk dobghti glorious & shynyng in his kyngys batayll he shall be . The Bich stone Bas reserued in the Sero phyns crobne : that Bas fulk doughti glorig & shenig i his kigy batayll of hepn Bhan thei faught Be Lucifer

¶ Of the diuse colozeis for the feld of cotearmu ris . v . bene worthy and . iiii . bene Royall

There be . iy . dyuse colors for the felde of Cotearmuris v Worthy & . im . Royall . The v Worthy be theys : Gol de Verte Gruse Plumby & Synam . And the . im . Royall be thas : Golblis Asure Sable & Siluer Hot nolb asi bla sens of armys ther be tot . vi . colors of ye Bich . ij . be metall & im . colors . Golde & Silu for metall . Vert Goulis Asure & Sabull for colors . & theys be vsid and no moo .

¶ Of nine preciy stonis . v . be noble & . iiii . of dig

¶ There be . iy . precious stonys . v . noble & . imm . of dignite The . v . noble stonys be theys Topasion Smaragmat Ama: thse Margaret & Aloys . The . im . of dignite be theys Rubi Saphyr Dyamond and Carbunull

¶ Of thorderis of āgelis . v . be ierarch & . iiii . trō

There be . iy . ordyr of angelis . v . Jerarchie . & . im . Trōly

Digitized by Google

The .v. Jerarchye be theys : Angelis Archangelis virtutes potestates ⁊ dominacões The . iiij . Tronli be theys prima; pt9 Trony Cherubyn and Seraphyn .

¶ v. of the dignitel of regalite be noble ⁊ . iiii . ⁊t

¶ Ther be . ix . dignites of Regalite . v . noble and . iiij ex cellent The . v noble be theys Gentilmã Squier Knyght Baron and Lorde . And . iiij . excellẽt be theis Erle Marke Duke and prynce

Nyne vertuel of preci9 stonys

Nyne vertues of prcia9 stonys ben ther . v . generalt and iiij . specialt The v . genalt ben theys A sure messenger Kene ⁊ hardy fortunat of victoꝛi Chevalry of gouernaunce ⁊ myghty; full of power The . iiij . specialt be theis : hote of corage Wyse ⁊ redy ⁊ vertues in Werkyng Durable ⁊ vnfaynt full doughty ⁊ glorose shynyng .

¶ The . iiii . vertuel of chevalry

Xxiiii vertues of chevalry ben ther : The fyrst is iuste in his beestis . clennes of his ysone . pti to haue of the poore . to be gracious to his preson . to be reuerent and faythfull to his god The secunde is that he be Wyse i his batail . prudent i his fightig knowyng ⁊ hauyng mynde i his Wittis . The . iij . is yt he be nott slowh i his Werris loke be sore yt his q̃all be true thanke god euer of his victory ⁊ for to haue mesure i his sustinãce . The iiij is to be strõg ⁊ stedfast i his gouñãce . to hope to haue yt victory

And wode not frome the felde and not to shame his cote armu re. Also that he be not to lustfull of his manhod Take that he be curtes lowly and gentill and with olde rebawdry in his langage.

Here shall be shewed the. ix. artikelis of gentil nes. v of them ar amorows and iiii soueraÿn

¶ Ther be. ix. artycles of gentilnes. and of theym. v. bene amorolbs. and. iiij. soueren. The. v. amowlbs gentilneses ben thees Lordeli of cowntenawnce Treteable in langage Wyse in his answere Perfite in gouernawnce. and There; full to faythfulnes. The. iiij soueryn gentilneses ben theis Selbe othes m'sweryng. Sopom to goddis bydyng. Kno; lowyng his owne birth in bering. and to drede his soueryn to offende.

¶ Ther be ix. vices contrarÿ to gentilmen

¶ There ben. ix. vices contrari to gentilmen of the Wiche. v. ben determynable and iiij. determynable The. v. determyna ble ben theys: oon to be full of slowthe in his werres. an other to be full of boost in his manhode. the thride to be full of coward; nes to is enemy. the fawrth to be full of lechri i his body. & the fifthe to be full of drynkyng & dronckunli. There be. iiij. deter mynable: on is to revoke is owñ chalange. an other to sley his prisoner with his owñ handis. the thride to hyde from his soue; raygnes baner in the felde. and the fifthe to telle his soueraygne fals talys

¶ Ther be. ix. Iestimable reioÿngis in armÿs

¶ The. ix. inestimable reioyngy of armys ben theys
Firste is a gentilman to be made a knyght i the felde at batell

¶ The ſeconde is lyuelode of hym to reſayue after manhode The .ij. is chiualry to do by force his ſouereyn ¶ The . iij . is ambaſſatt to be put in his honde for Wiſdom . ¶ The .iij. is proues of knyghthode done be force alioundis i honor of renoune. ¶ Thys be calde in armys the .iij. autentyke Now folowith the . iij . endyng ſtremytallis perſonalt ¶ The firſt is a pore knyght to be maried to the blode Royalt ¶ The ſecunde is to haue thanke of his ſouereyn perpetualt · ¶ The .iij . is to kepe his Cote armure vnſhamyd in trualt ¶ And the . iij . is to kepe alt poyntis of is knyghthod as geſtys troianorum declarith .

Knaw ye that theis ii. orderis wer. firſt wedlok ſ then knyghthode. and knyghthode was made before Cote armure was ordened .

¶ Ther was non order wt . ij . Wedloke firſt and knyghthod after . A knyght was made before ony cote armure . and Olybion was the firſt knyght that euer was . Aſteriali his fader come bi the right lyne of that gentilman Jafeth and ſaw the people multiplie & had no goueraer And the curſed peple of Sem Wered ayenys them Olibion was the ſtrongeſt and the manfulleſt man in his tyme And the peple cried oñ Olibion to be thyr maiſter and their goũer A thouſand men wer than multiplied of Jafethis lyne . Aſteriall made to his ſoñ a garlande a bowte his hede of . iij . diuerſ preciouſe ſtonys in tokenyng of chyualri to be a goũer of a . M . men . & vnto thys ſame day ye kingh haue his name i latẽ yt is as moch to ſay yt goũñ of . iiij . mẽ

Olibion knelyd to Asterpalk his fader and askyd his blis-
syng. Asterpalk toke Olibions swerde that was Jasethis
fadolchon that Tubalk made be fore the floode: and smote flat
lyng. vi. tymys vppon the pyght shulder of Olibion in toke-
nyng of the vi. vertuys of the forsayde precious stonys and
gaue him his blissing with a charge to kepe the. vi. vertuys
of charyte now folowyng as ye shalk here.

¶ Theis be the charges or artikelis that euery knyght shulde kepe by the dignyte of his order & they be ix. v. tempall and iiii goostly

Ther be. v. temperalk vertuys & .iiii. goostly vertuys of charite
the. v. tempalk vertuys be theys · he shalk not turne his backe
to his enemy for to flee. The. j. is that he shalk truly holde
his promyse to his frende: and also to his foo. The. ij. is
he shalk be free of mete and drinke to alk his meny a boute him
The. iij. is he shalk vpholde maydonys pyght. The · v. is
that he shalk holde vp wydowys pyght. Theys be the. iiij. vertu-
ys of charite goostly. The first is: he shalk honoure his fa-
der and his moder. The. ij is he shalk do noon harme to the
pore. The. iij. is he shalk be mercifull. The. iiij. is he shalk
holde with the sacifice of the grete god of heuyn. And than
Asterpalk did make to Olibion a targett of Olyfe tree with
iij. corneris. j. a bouen is face and oon dolbne to the gwlbnd
warde. in tokenyng that thys Olibion was the chefe of alk

Digitized by Google

the blode of the .iij. sonnys of Noy By the Olif tree he wonder stode wietery for to kyñ By the point of his target to the gwo; wnde the cursed brothir Cham By the corner of his target a wuan firtherest that other brothir Sem . That othir corner nest to hym selfe betokenyth that gentilman Jafeth the blis sed brothir of whome god and man come by right lyne

¶ The maner of knyghthodis ben .ii. oon with the Swerde An other with the Bath

Ther be .ij. manes of knyghthodes oon with the sherde and an other with the bath The bath is the worthest by cause of iiij. Royalties . Oon is whan an vnaged prynce is made knyght or he crouned kyng The seconde is whan a kyng or an Emperour is crowned . The thyrde is whan a quene or an Emperis is crowned . The iiij . is whan a kyng or an Emperour cum to speke with an other of dyuerse londys

Nyne maner of gentylmen ther bene

¶ Ther is a Gentylman of Auncetre and of blode
¶ And ther is a Gentylman of bloode
¶ Ther is a Gentylman of Cōtearmur : and theos be .iij Oon of the Kyngys bage . An other of a lordeship . And the thyrde is of the kyllyng of a Sarysoñ
¶ And ther is a gentylman vntrysk
¶ And ther is a gentylman Vycwyfet
¶ And ther is a gentylman Spirytuall
¶ Ther is also a gentylman spirituall and temporall . and all thys ben more playnly declared in thys booke

¶ Gentilmen be calde. iiii. maner of wyse one of awncetreis and iii of Cotearmure

Ther be .iiij. diuerse maner of gentilmen . Oon his a gentyl; man of aduncetreys : Wich muste nedis be a gentilman of blode. Ther be . iij . gentilmen of Cotearmure and not of blode Oon is a gentylman of Cotarmure of the gynges bagge . that is to say his deuice by an herald Ygoueñ . An other gentilman of Cotarmure is and not of blode a kyng geuyng a lordshipp to a yoman vnder his seall of patent to hym and to his eyrys for euer more he may Bere a Cotarmure of the same lordshipp
The thride his a yoman cristenyd yif he kill a gentylman sarsyn he may Bere the sarsinys Cotarmure and noo sarsyn a sarsynis cotarmure nethir cristemys cotarmure bi feghtyng in noo Wyse Wit sum men say that a cristen man ouercomyng a cristen man feghtyng in the list shall bere the cotarmure of him that is ouer comyn . Or if a souereyn kyng make of a yoman a knyght that same knyght is a gentyman of blode by the royalte of the kyng and of knyghthood

¶ A gentylman spirituall

¶ Ther is a gentylman a churle sone a preste to be made and that is a spirituall gentylman to god and not of blode . But if a gentylmannys sone be made preste he is a gentilman both spirituall and temperall . Criste Was a gentilman of his moder be; halue and bace cotarmure of aumseuris . The . iiij . Euangeliste berith Wittenese of Cristis Warkys in the gospell With all thap; postilles . They Were Jewys and of gentylmen come by the right lyne of that Worthy conquerour Judas machabeus bot that by suc cession of tyme the kynrade fell to pouerty . after the destruccion

Digitized by Google

of Judas Machabeus and then they felt to labouris & ware cal; de no gentilmen. and the. iiii. doctouris of holi chirch Seynt Je; rom Ambrose Augustyn and Gregori war gentilmen of blode and of cotarmures

¶ Allo the diuisionys of cotarmuris be. ix. thatt is to witt .v. perfyte and. iiii. vnperfyte

¶ Ther be. ix. dyuisionis of cotarmures. v. perfite & iiii. vnperfite. The. v. perfite be theys Termynall Collateralt Abstralete Fyralt and Bastard.

¶ Diferens Enbordyng

¶ Termynalt is calde in armys alt the bretheren of right lyne bethir by fadre or by modre may bere the right heyris cotamure with a differens calde Enbordyng

¶ Dyferans Jemews

¶ Collateralt is calde in armys the sonnys of the bretheren of the right heyre berying the cotarmuris of theyr fadris with a dyfferans Jemelys

¶ Diferens molet

¶ Fyralt in armys is calde the thirde degre by the rightlyne from the right heyre by line male. thay may bere there fadris cote armure with a differans molet

Diferans countertreuis

¶ The bastarde of fyralt shalt bere his fadrus cotarmure countertreuys. that is to say what so euer he berith in his felde he shalt bere in the colowris dyuerse and no more

How ther be .iiii. cotarmurys imperfite and be borȝyn wyth owte diferans

Ther be .iiii. cotarmuris vnperfite : and ȝe borne with owte difference . The first cotarmure is if a lordshipp a fore seyde be gouen vnder patent bi the kyng . and if he die with oute heyr his cotarmure is Idõ .

¶ The secunde is the cotarmure of the kyngis gyfte yif he dye with owte heyr his cotarmure is done . and yif theys .ij. cotarmuris haue vnshelld forth : the fifth degree of theam bering lyne by male be gentilmen of blode by lawe of armys

¶ The threde cotarmure of the Sarsyn yif the cristyn man dye with owte vnshelld his cotarmure is done . and if he had vnshelld forth vnto the fifth degree from him by right lyne of vnshelld male he is a gentylman of blode

¶ The falwith cotarmure of the chefe blode yif he dye with owte ony vnshelld the hole cotarmure is lost than it fallith to be a cotarmure of thymperfite bering with a differans

¶ All the bastardis of all cotarmuris shall bere a fesse Sũ call hit a bastõ of oon of the .iiii. dignites of colouris . except the bastarde of the fiyales and the bastarde of the brethyrne of the cheue blode where the ritaunce is departed to eũych brochir e like moch theys bastardis shall adde more bagy to his armys or take a bay a bagy of armys

Note here well who shall gyue cotarmures

¶ Ther shall none of the . iy . ordris of regalite bot all onli the souereyne kyng geue cootarmur . for that is to hym impro

Digitized by Google

prid bi lalbe of armys . And yit the kyng shall nott make a knyght with owte a cootarmure by fore .

Euy knyght chestayn i the felde mai make a cootarmur knight

In how many places a knyght may be made

A Knyght is made in . v . dyuerse placis In mustering in londe of werre . In Semblyng vnder baneris . In listys of the bath And at the sepulcur

A lalled cotarmure is on the moderis parte

A lassed cootarmure is calde the coote of a gentylwoman hauyng kyuelode wedyd to a man hauyng noo cootarmure . hir sone may bere hir cootarmur with a differance of armys duryng his liue by the curtesy of lalb of armys . and his sone shall none bere bot so be that the gentylwoman be kyr or nept of blode to that cootarmure . Or ellis beyng hir byrth of the blode Royall and than shall hir kyre bere hir cootarmure

How Gentyll men be made of Gromis that be nott of cootarmure nether blode and they be calld vntriall and apocrifate as hit shewith folowyng

Ther be . ij . dyuerse Gentylmen made of gromys ! that be nott gentilmen of cotearmure nother of blode . Oon is calde in armys a gentylman vntriall that is to say made vp emong relygyous men as priorys Abbotis or Bysshoppis . That other is called in armys a gentill man apocrifate that is to say ma

ꝛe ꝓpp and gouyn to him the name and the lyueray of a gentyl; man.

¶ In armys be vi diferences that is to say ii. for excellent and iiii. for nobullys

Ther be. vi. Differences in armys. ij: for the excellent. and. iij. for the nobles. Label and Enbordurynge for lordis. Jemelis Molettys Flowre delyce and Quynfoyles for the nobles.

In blasyng of armys be. ix. quadrattis that is to say. v. quadrate finiall and iiii. Royall

IN blasyng of armys ther be. ix. quadrattis for to con; sider. v. quadrate finiall and. iij. Royall. Fyue quadrate finiall be theys. Gerey. Gerundi. Frety. Geraly. and Endenty.

¶ Gerey is called in armys when coatarmuris ar. ix quarteris dyuerse colowris.

¶ Gerundi is called in armys when the coatarmure is of. ix. dyuerse colowris: ꝑ a fusitarget with in the coatarmure of Royall colowre that hit be of

¶ Frety is calde in armys when the coatarmure is counterfesid

¶ Geraly is calde in armys when the coatarmure is powderd Bot a blasar shall not say he berith Ermen. Silver powderd with Ermen Bot he shall say he berith Ermen or ellis in fume armys he muste say demy Ermen: Wich is to sai Whitli Ermen

In so moch that i the fifthe quadrat fimalt hit is determyned of the tokenys of armys . or I procede to hit : is shelved Whatt maner of tokeny a gentylt man may Beer .

A gentalman mai not Beer tokynys of armys bot of steinig colowre . that is to say his cotarmure ynyat or ellis I gerait With pretiouse stonys

Gerattyng howe . ij . bagges of cotarmuris . First With crosslettis . and of theym ther be . iiij dyuerse . and tho bene theys Cros fixyly . Cros paty Cros crosletis . and Cros flory

¶ The secunde bage is flowre delyce .
¶ The threde baage is roslettys
¶ The fowrith baage is prymarose .
¶ The fifthe baage is quynfolis .
¶ The septhe baage is diaclys
¶ The seuemith baage is chappelettys
¶ The . viij . baage is Molettys .
¶ And the . ix . baage is Cressauntis that is to say halfe the moone . theys be polderygis of cotarmuris .

¶ The fifthe quadrate is calde Endently of . iij . diuse Beris that is to say bendly lentally and fyesly .
¶ Bendly is calde i armys Whan a cotearmure is calde Endentyde of . ij . dyuerse colowris in the length of the cotearmure
¶ Lentally is calde in armys Whan ye cotarmure is Endentid With . ij . dyuerse colowris in the bezde of the cotarmure
¶ Fyesly is called in armys . iij . maner Beys Fesy bagy fesy target and fesy generalt .

Digitized by Google

Fesy bagy is when tokenys of armys be disseuered from the cheef of the cotearmure to the right spleyer in the feelde

¶ Fesy target is when a scogion or an engislet is made in the myddult of the cotearmure.

¶ Fesy generalt is calde in armys when the cotearmure is Endentid with .ij. dyuerse colours from the laste poynt of the cotearmure to the spleyer

The chefe is calde in armys the myddys of the cotearmure of the right syde.

Quadrat is calde in armys when the felde is set with sum tokyn of armys.

¶ A quadrant-finalt is called in armys when the felde is discolourid with tokenis of armys hauyng no beest in the felde.

A Quadrant Royalt is calde when the feelde occupyeth ye token of a beest or ony other tokyn set with in the cotearmure to the nombre of fiue.

¶ The first quadrant is oon tokyn of armys allonli sett and nyght after his byrthe he berith.

¶ The seconde quadrant Royall is berynge in his cotearmur .ij. thyngy calde the tokenys of armys. that is to say .ij. flowr: redelice .ij. fylcyals. .ij. rosis. .ij. chappletis .ij. lebardis. .ij. lyonys. and so the .iiij. quadrat Royalt is to bere a beest Raunpande: bebaly-lentally. and fesselp.

Here shall be shewed what Cootarmtris restry: al ben and weer the blaser shall begyn to blase.

Digitized by Google

Thre coolarmuris be ther called reſtryalt in armys. Con is whan a coolarmure is barri of dyuerſe colowris to the poynt. and what colowre the poynt be of. the poynt is the felde. Ther the blaſer ſhall begynne.

¶ The ſeande coolarmure reſtriall is calde ī armys whan a coolarmure is paly of dyuerſe colouris to the poynt. & whall pale medyll m the poynt yᵗ colowre is the felde The blaaſer ſhall blaſe from that colowre to the nexte colowre pale.

¶ The threde coolarmure reſtriall is calde m armys whan a coolarmure is ſentry of dyuerſe colowris to the poynt and whall ſettre medyll m the poynt yᵗ colowre is the felde. The blaſeyr ſhall blaſe from yᵗ colowre to the nexte colowre of the lefte ſide of the coolarmure and blaſe the colowre ſentri.

Merke what ſentre Fixal Mangis Gorgis & o/ther diuerſe here now. folowyng be calde ī armys

¶ A Sentre m armys is called ſtakar of tentis.
¶ Fixiall be called m armys mylner pykes.
¶ Mangys be called m armys a ſleue.
¶ Gorgys be called m armys Water bulgers.
¶ Elynellis be calde m armys. iiij. quadrantis tuncholis.
¶ Oglys be calde m armys goneſtonys.
¶ Torillettis be calde m armys Waſtell.
¶ Diaclys be called m armys ſtoppellys.

Digitized by Google

¶ Myrris be calde in armys mewbris or glaſſes .
¶ Feons be calde in armys brode arolb hydys .
¶ Tronkys be calde in armys any beſtys hyde or neck Thytt thagrbli a ſonder .
¶ Demy is calde in armys halfe a beſt in the felde.
¶ Countretreuis is calde in armys Whan halfe the beeſt is of oon colour and that other halfe of an other colour

¶ Eny cotarmure that berith a crosſe to the poynt : the poyn te is the felde . as Seynt George berith gollis ſolbre anglettis of Siluer . bot ayens this rule ſum blaſeris of armys repugne as hit is ſhewed in the boke foloyng .

¶ Theis . iij . termys . of : and . With ſhall not be reherſed in armys bot onys any of thaym

¶ Ther be diuerſe berynġys of feeldys

Diuerſe berynġis of feeldis ther be ¶ Oon is beryng hole felde . hit is clepyd in armis clauzy
¶ The ſeclde is berig too feldis . hit is calde i armis Coũcli
¶ The threde is beryng too feldis in . iiij . quarteris : hit is calde in armys quarily

¶ Ther bene . iii . cote armurys grytty

Three cotarmuris grytty ther bene in armys . Oon is cal; led cheeky that is Whan the felde is cheked With diuſe colouris

¶ The ſeconde is calde Wynde that is to ſay Whan the felde is made like Walbis of oon colour or of diuerſe colouris

¶ The shrude is calde herry whan the felde is made like go
bolettys of dyuerse colowrs .

In armys be ii. pinyonys . also it shewys wat
clawry cownterly and quarterly bene with other

¶ Ther be in armys calde . ij . pynyonys Oon is whan the
feeld his a sabtri . Seynt andrewys crosse may be clauri co;
unterly quarterly . Clawri is called playn of oon coloure .
Cownterly is whan colowrs quarterly be . ij . colowrs set
in . ij . quarteris
¶ The seaunde pynyon is called cheffrounce that is a couple
of sparis . and that may be clawry counterly quarterli gereri
and byally .
¶ Gereri is whan . iij . cheffrounce be to gedur or moo .
¶ Byalk is called whan a barre is be twene . ij cheffrounce

Here endeth the mooste speciall thyngys of the boke of the
lynage of Coote armuris and how gentylmen shall be know;
yn from vngentylmen . and now here foloyng begynnyth the
boke of blasyng of all man armys : in latyn french & English

¶ Explicit prima pars.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Here begynnyth the blasyng of armys

I Haue shewyd to yow in thys booke a foore how gentilmē began. and how the law of armys was first ordant. and how many colowrs ther be in cootarmuris · and the difference of cootarmuris with many other thynggis that here needis not to be rehersed. Now I intende to procede of signys in armys and of the blasyng of all armys. But for to rehers all the signys that be borne in armys as Pecok Pye Bar Dragon Lyon & Dolfyn and flowrs and leeuys it war to longe a tariyng. ner I can not do hit: ther be so many. But here shall shortli be shewyd to blase all armys if ye entende diligentli to youre ru: lys. And be cause the cros is the moost worthi signe emong al signys in armys: at the cros I will begynne. in the which thys nobull and myghti prynce kyng Arthure hade grete trust so that he lefte his armys that he bare of. iij. Dragonys. and oū that an other shelde of. iij. crownys. and toke to his armys a cross of Siluer in a feelde of perle and on the right side an ymage of owre blessid lady with hir sone in hir arme. and be that signe of the cros he dyd many mawelis after. as hit is writyn in the bokis of cronycles of his dedys Also I haue red thys signe of the cros to be sende from god to that blessid man Mazarii as vincencius sayth. in speculo historiali. of the maz: uellis deth of Julian thapostita Emprour. li°. xxv°. he sayth thangele brought down to the forsayd Mezarii all armure necessarii with a shelde of asure and a cros flura with. iij. rosis of golde. as here i this And I fonde neuer that euer any armys bare sende from heuyn but in theym was the sygne of the cros. Except in tharmys of the kyng of fr: aunce the which armys certanli war sende bi an awngell from he: uyn that is to say. iij flowrs in manez of Swerdis in a felde

Digitized by Google

of asure . as hit shelbis here . the bich certan ar
mys bare geuyn to the forsayd kyng of fraunce
in sygne of euerlastyng trowbult and that he
and his successares all way bith batailk and sle
veddys shulde be punyshid .

I alke here moo questionis of the crollis signe

NOw I turne agayne to the signe of the crws and aske a
question : how mony crosshis be borne in armys . to the bich quest
tion vnder a certan nowmbur I dare not answere . for crosshis
innumerabult ar borne now dayli . bot decendyng to eueri crws
the bich a fore tyme I haue seen as fer as I can I entende to
discribe . emong the bich first the playn crws shalk be discribed of
the bith cros moo dowbtis be made then of mony odyr crosshies .
for as moch as bise men in blasyng of armys hold for a ver
ri rule that ye moost begynne to blase at the lowyst wynt of the
sheelde . if the wynt be of on colowre . and so that colowre thalk
is in the wynt of the sheelde is the felde of the armys

¶ Bot in that rule to remeue a way alk dowbtis ye most mer
ke dyligently : that . that rule is true bith a littyli addicion . ye
is to bitte that in armys to be blased it is alk way to begynne
at the wynt of the sheelde : if the wynt be of on colowre that is
true : if the colowre of the wynt be more copiose or gretter in thos
armys . and then bith owte dowbte ye shalk begyn ther . or el
lys not . ¶ And beer the colowres be equalk ptid other on len
gth or ouerwart then euermore ye shalk begynne to blase thoos
armys in the vght side . and in that case ye shalk haue no respe
ct to the wynt .

¶ And iff it be asked how berith Seynt george . it is to be

lenalb that ye moſt ſay . latine . ¶ Portat o;
num ſcutum de argento cum quadam cruce plana
de rubio . ¶ Gallice . Il port dargent vng croſ
playn de goulez . ¶ Anglice . The beris a fel
de of Siluer with a playn croſ of goules . as he:
re appeith in theys armys .

And the ſame maner of wyſe ar alle croſſis hauyng a playn
croſ to be blaſed Therfore thay er : ye ſay Seynt george beris
the felde of goules with . iiii . quarteris of Siluer of whome the
reſonis I lowue not . for by thoos reſonis a playn croſ ſhulde ne
uer be founde in armys ner Velny no differens in armys .

¶ Off an croſ of an equalle length on euery parte .

A playn croſ is founde in armys differyng from the firſt
croſ . and hit is of an equalle length on eúi parte as it ap
peith here . and theys armys be harder then the o;
ther to blaſe as hit is opyn . for thendys of thys
croſ tolchis not the hemmys or the vtter parte of ye
ſheelde i no parte in wich ye ſhalle ſay that he : that
beris theis armys . latine . ſic ¶ Ille portat de

aſuro cum vna cruce plana aurea equalis longi;
tudinis ep omni parte ¶ Gallice . Il port daſer vng croſ pla;
yn dung longuryp tout . ¶ Anglice . The beith aſure with a
playn golden croſ of equalle length on eúy parte . And this is
the differans in blaſyng . that alle thendys of thys croſ arne of e
qualle length the wich may not be in the playn croſ a fore . for the
foote is the lengeſt parte . and hit be welle made . And this diffe

Digitized by Google

rens ſhalt appere bettir in a coolarmure : then it doth in a ſheld & ſo thez is an euydent differens be tlwix y^e . ij . croſſis aforſaid

¶ Off a playn cros ſtraple .

THer is an oder cros aqualt ſtraythyz in the myddis then in thendys Bith opyn corneris as here not touchyng the vtteriſt parte of the ſheelde in any parte thez of . and hit is calde a cros patent . And ye ſhalt ſay that he the Bich beris this cros beris i this man . ¶ latine ſic . Ille portat vnam crucem argenta; tam patentem in campo nigro . ¶ Gallice . Il port de ſable vng cros patee dargent . ¶ Angli ce ſic . He berith Sable a cros paty of Siluer .

¶ Off a cros patent fixibylt .

THis cros patent is made dyuerſe in the foto of the ſame as hit apperith here . And then hit is calde a cros patée fixible . for i the erth ſych a cros may be pyghit . in the Bich cros . ij . of the hyz partes az opyn in the corneris and bradez than in the myddys . & his foote is diſpoſid to piche i the erthe . latine . ¶ Ille portat de rubio cum vna cruce figitiua de albo ¶ Gallice . Il port de gullis vng cros patee fiche dargent . ¶ Et anglice . He berith Gullys and a cros paty fixibilt of Siluer . And knalbe ye that ther be mo ny croſſis the Bych may be maade fixibilt as hit ſhalt be ſhewd here folobyng in dyuerſe .

Digitized by Google

Off a playn cros cordyd.

Among odyr cwssis oon is foiñde the Wich is calde a cord did cros as here it is shelbed i this cros the Wich is calde a corddid cros: for hit is made of cordys. the Wich certan cros I se bott late: in thazmys of a nobull man: the Wich in verry deed Was summe tyme a crafty man a Roper as he hym selfe sayd. And ye shall say of him that berith theys azmys latine ¶ Ille portat gobbles cum cruce plana cordata de argento. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port de goulles e vng cros playn cordee dargent. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith gullis and a cros playn cordyd of Syluer.

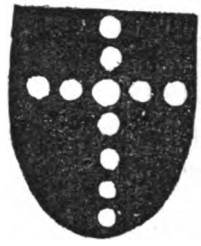
¶ Off a cros playn pforatid.

There is an odyr cros playn the Wich mervelusly fro the playn cros of Saynt george differis. as here apperith. And here it is to be markyd. that thoppynyon of sum men: saying is. that theis azmys be chekkerd azmys. and this oppynyon is vttirli to be repreuyd for azmys may not be chekkerd bot at the lest in the nombir of. iiij. and in a gretter nombir they may Wele be made. as afterward shall be shewed. Therfor it is to be said. latine sic. ¶ Ille portat vnam crucem argenteã pforatam in campo nigro. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de Sable vng cros dargent ptee. Anglice. ¶ He berith Sable and a cros perforatd of Siluer.

Digitized by Google

¶ Off a besantid cros.

Ouer theis crossis be haue an odyr cros the Wiche I salbe late in tharmys of a certan Januens as here it shelbis And this is calde a besant cros for it is made all of besanttis . and sych a cros may be made als so: ne With lytill cakys as With besanttys . for besanttys and lytill cakys differ not bot in colore . for besanttis be euer of golden colour . ne the colour of the besant shall be expressid in blasyng of armys . for it nedis not to say a besant of golde for ther be no besantis bot of golde Therfor it is to be sayd . latine sic . Ille portat vnam crucem talentatam in campo rubeo . . Gallice sic . ¶ Il port de gollez vng cros besauntee : Anglice sic . ¶ He berith gobles and a cros besauntid .



¶ Off a cros flurry .

Nolb solowith an odyr cros flurry . the Wich is so called as hit appeirith here . And therfor hit is calde de flourishyng cros . for hit has flouris in eueri ende vpWard that is to say saue the foote . thys cros flurri sum tyme is borne in armys fipabult . And then it is calde in armys a cros flurri fipabult . for in iij . of his endys he is florishyng and in the foote pichabult or fipabult . Therfore it is to be sayde of him that beris hit . latine . ¶ Portat vnam cuccem auream floridam in campo asureo . Et gallice . Il port dasor vng croys floretee dor . Anglice . ¶ He berith asure and a cros flurri of golde .

Digitized by Google

¶ Now here shalt be shewyd of a cros flurri patent i armys

NOw folowith a nod cros the Wich is called a cros flurry patent. as here it apperith. And hit is calde a cros flurri patent for he hath his endis oppyn and i^{e} myddys of euery ende apperith an other thryde in the maner of a flowre as it is oppynli shewed in this cros. Therfore it shalt be sayd that the berer of theys armys: beris in this Wyse as foloth first in latyn thus: ¶ Portat vnam crucem floridam patentem de auro in campo azureo. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port dazur vng pate floretee dor. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith asure with a cros patent flurri of golde.

¶ Ye shalt vnderstand here of a playn Wateri cros.

OVere ouer ye shalt vnderstonde that ther is an othere playn cros the Wich certanly is calde a Watery cros. and hit is calde a Wateri cros for hit is made bi the maner of Water twibbulled with Wynde. as here hit shewys i theys armys. Therfor he the Wich berith theys armys beris in this Wyse as it shalt folowe first in latyn thus. ¶ Portat vnam crucem planam undosam de argento in campo rubeo. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de gowlez vng cros playn vndee dargent. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith gowles and a playn Wateri cros of Syluer.

Digitized by Google

¶ Also ther is a cros that is calde muechyt.

All armys also ar founde mco crossis the Wich armade of colowrs muelthyt or mantat as here m thys cros appe; rith And it is calde a cros muelthyt for the cau se that hit has .ŋ. colowris . oon put m to an o; ther . And of him that beris theys armys ye sh; alt say first m latyn thus . ¶ Portat vnam crucem planom muectam de coloribus altis et m gris m campo rubeo . Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port de gowlez vng cros playn veire argent ⁊ sable . Anglice . ¶ The beath gowles and a cros of Siluer and Sable m; uelthyt .

Off an other maner cros that is calde a cros crosslet .

Yet folowith an other cros the Wiches calde a cros cros sit or crosslet . and hit is calde crossit for ī cūz ende he is crossit as here apperis . Bot this cros is not so oft borne m armys by him selfe as other cros sis neuer the lees mony tymys hit is borne i di; mynutiuys that is to say m littyll crossis crossit And ther armys ar powderat With littyll cros; sis cruciatit . And ye shall say thus of hym yt beris theys armys first m latyn . Ille portat vnam crucem cruciatam de argento m campo asoreo . Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port dasor vng croix croycee argent . Anglice sic ¶ The berith asure ⁊ a cros crosslet of Siluer . And Whan such crossis ar borne and put i armys as I said

afore i dymynuturys q̄ Ve olde amy c̄tan nombre then thay ar called in ffrench Croſlettys.

¶ More ouer ther is a cros maſculatit as here it ſolowis.

Yett ye Welſh pit y^t ther is an other cros the Wych is cal; led a cros maſculatit as here it apperis. And this cros is called a cros maſculatit for he is made of maſ culys of the Wich certan maſculis ye ſhall ſe af; terward in the chapitur of fuſyllis maſculit: and loſyngys Where this matir ſhall be moor playnli tretit. And he that beris thys armys beris as it is ſhewed here after. firſt in latyn thus.

¶ Portat vnam crucem maſculatam de argento in campo a; ſureo. Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port dasor vng cros maſculee dargent. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith aſure and a cros maſcu latit of Syluer.

¶ Alſo ther is a cros maſculatit and perforatit as here.

Be it knowe: that thys cros maſculatit ſum tyme is pfo ratit. in the maſculys as it is oppyn in the perſyng he e folowyng. And thus ye moſt blaſe hym. firſt in latyn in thys Wyſe. Ille portat vnam crucem maſculatam perforatam de auro in ſcuto argenteo. Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port dargent vng cros de gullez maſcule pfee. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith Syluer With a cros of goldes maſculatit perſit.

Digitized by Google

¶ Ther is a mylneris cros as here it ſhall be ſhelded.

HEre folowis an other cros the Wich is calde the cros of a milne for hit is made to the ſimylitude of a cirtan iſtrument of yrne in mylnys the Wich berith the mylne ſton by the Wich iſtrument: that ſton in his ors is borne equally that he declyne not ouer mych on the right ple ner on the lefte parte. bot myniſtering to euery parte that: that is his equally and With owte fraude. And thys is geuyn to Jugis to bere in theyr armys: and to thos that haue Juriſdiction vndar theym. That is to ſay as the forſayd iſtrumēt is directe: to the mylne ſtone equalli and With owte gyle. So thos Juges ar bondyn to gyffe equalli to euery man his right. And it is to be ſayd yᵗ the poſſeſſor of theis armys beris i this Wyſe. firſt i latyn thus. ¶ Portat vnam crucem molē dinarem argenteam in campo rubeo. Et iam gallice. ¶ Il port gobbliez vng cros moleyne dargent. Anglice. He berith gobbles and a mylneris cros of Syluer.

NOw it ſhall be ſhelded of a cros that is turnyt a gayn.

QEtan We haue a cros the Wich is calde a cros turnyt a gayn: and this cros is calde retornyt: for the cauſe yᵗ thendys of this cros on euery ſide ar retornyt agayn bi the maner of a Rāmys horne. And he that beris theis armys beris i this Wiſe firſt in latyn thus. Portat vnam crucem auream iu ſam in ſcuto aſureo. Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port dasor vng cros recercelee dor. Anglice ſic. ¶ He beris aſure With a cros reuerſit of golde.

Digitized by Google

¶ Off a cros fforkyd.

Under stande ye that thar be other men the Wich beer in thayr armys a certan forkyd cros as thys is. And hit is called forkyd: for as moch as that att thendys of hit ar clouyn and forkyd. Therfore hit shall be sayd of thos men that berit theys armys in this Wise. primo latine. ¶ Portat vnam crucem furcatam de auro in campo aereo.

Gallice. ¶ Il port dasor vng cros dor.
Anglice. ¶ He berith asure With a cros forkyd of golde.

¶ Off a cros engraylid or engradid.

Also thar be certayn nobull men the Wich beer a cros engradyd or engraylid. as it aperis here folowyng And hit is calde a cros engraylid for hit is not playne in ony parte of him bot engraylid also Well ouer his length as ouer his breed. Neuer the lees this engraylyng is no proper langage aftir the sight of thys cros: bot rather an endentyng as trouth is Bot it is the comune maner of speykyng in theys armys. Therfore ye most say as I sayd a fore. And ye shall say of him that berys theys armys in thys Wyse. First in latyne thus, Portat vnam crucem ingradatam de albo in campo rubeo. Et iam Gallice.

¶ Il port de gullys vng cros ingral dargent. Anglice.
¶ He beris gowlys and a cros ingrayled of Syluer.

Digitized by Google

¶ Off a cros cutoff.

IFynde yet an othyr cros: the Wich is borne mony tim; yes i tharmys of nobull men. the Wich is calde a cros trill cutid. And hit is calde trunkatid for hit is ma; de of .ij. treys the tops cut a Way · as here. Ther; fore it is to be sayd that the possessor of theys az; mys beris in latine thus. ¶ Portat vnam cru cem truncatam de argento in campo rubeo.

Et gallice. I l port de gullez vng cros recopee dargent. Anglice. ¶ He berith gobbles With a cros trunka tid of Siluer.

¶ Off a knotty cros.

KNowe ye yit after theys crossis ther is an othez cros the Wiche is calde a knotty cros: the Wich i certan is calde so for hit has m eüy ende certan knottis. as here.

And it is to be sayde of hym that beris theys az mys in thys Wyse. Primo latine. I pse por; tat vnam crucem auream nodulatam i scuto a so reo. Et gallice. ¶ Il port dasor vng cros to tone dor. Anglice. ¶ He beris asure With a cros knotty of goolde.

And thys cros is founde othez While pyatte or figitywe i az mys. andy then his foote is figitywe as I sayd a fore.

Digitized by Google

¶ Off a cros flurri knottid.

Over thies crossis we haue a certan cros flurri of the wiche it is spokyn a foore. the wiche cros flurri is founde knotty as here. And that is as I soyd a foore whan knottys ar founde i thendys and the anglis of the sayd cros. And the verer of the sayd armys latine. ¶ Portat vnam crucem nodulatam floridam auztream in campo de asuro. Et gallice sic ¶ Il port dasor vng cros florette botone dor. Anglice. ¶ He berith asure and a cros flurri knotty of golde.

¶ Off a cros dobbuk ptitid.

A cros dobbuk is founde in the armys of dyuerse nobuk men the wych certan cros is calde a dobbuk ptitid cros. For if it be deuydid or partid after the long way or the brode way yit ther a bydys on dobbuk cros as we may se here. Yit I haue seen many nobuk men dobbyng of thys cros moore then of any cros a fore said: the wich neuer the lees after long disputacions in thappynion a foresayd vestid and concludid. Therfore he that beris theys armys. latine sic. ¶ Portat vnam crucem duplicatam argenteam in campo nigro. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port sable vng cros dobble petie dargent. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith Sable and a cros dobble petitid of Siluer.

Digitized by Google

ℂ Off a cros dobble ptitid floriſhid

This cros dobble ptitid is varied ſum times . and then hit is called a cros dobble partitad floriſhid . as here . Neuerthcles hit is calde a cros fluxti impropuzli as ſum men ſayen for hit faylith the myddys of that flodre as a noon hit ſhall folob in the nepl armys . the bich certan myddys by no maner of byſe in that cros dobble ptitid may be . as a noon it ſhall be ſhelbed . Bot he that berith theis armis latine . ℂ Portat vnam crucem duplam ptitam auream in campo rubeo . Gallice . ℂ Il port de gobles vng cros double ptie floretee dor . Anglice · ℂ He berith gobles and a cros dobble ptitid fluxti of golde .

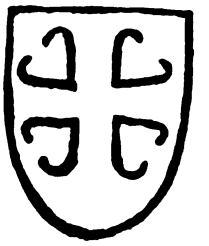
ℂ Off a cros tripartitid floriſhid .

Bot as is ſhelbed a fore this cros is calde a cros dobble ptitid floriſhid for ther faylith the myddys of the cros by the bich the cros floriſhid is made pfite . as here hit is opyn . the bich certan myddys putt ther to it ſhall not be called a cros dobble ptitid floriſhed Bot rathir it ſhall be calde a cros threfolde ptitid fluxti . and then it is bell blaſed . for and it be dyuidid after the longnes or after the brodenes . all bay oon parte ſhall a byde triptitid in the myddis of the cros as it is opyn in tharmys a fore brittyn . And therfore he that berith theis armis . latine . ℂ Portat vnã crucẽ triptitã de argẽ° in cãpo de aſuro . Gallice . ℂ Il port aſer vng cros treſoyes ptee floretee argent . Anglice ſic . ℂ He berith of aſure bith a cros triptitid floree of Siluer .

Digitized by Google

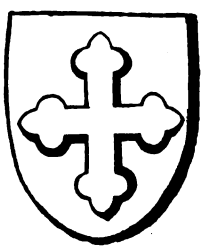
¶ Off a mylneris cros shadowyd or ombratid.

A Dowbte theer is yit of a certayn shadow of a mylneryys cros as it shewith here folowyng. And knaw ye that it is called a shadow of a cros for euermore thys shadow is made of blacke colowre. of what sume euer colowre the felde be of. the shadow is made of blacke. and the bodi of the same shadow is of ye same colowre with the felde. ¶ And he that be rith theys armys. latine. Portat vnam crucem ombratam in campo aureo. ¶ Gallice sic. Il port dor vng cros moleyne ombre, ¶ Anglice. He berith of golde with a mylneris cros ombratid or shadowyd.



¶ Off a cros floree patent ombratid.

A Nother sampull is sene of the ombracion of a certayn cros. and thys cros is calde a cros floree ombratid as apperith here. bot truly spekyng and propurli. it is no cros: bott a shadow of such a cros. and the reson is. for the bodi of the said shadow is of the same colowre with the felde. And so the colore that is in the felde shewith by all the body of the sayd shadow. ¶ And thoo that beer thes armys. latine. Portant vnam crucē floridam patentem ombratam in campo rubeo ¶ Gallice sic. Il port de gowlez vng cros patee floritee ombre ¶ Anglice sic. He berith of gowles and a cros patent floree ombratyd.



Digitized by Google

¶ Off a cros floru patent ombratat and perforatid.

Neuertheles after sum men thys shadoyd cros other wyse is perfid marueluslye as hit folowith here and then hit is caide a cros floru patent ombratyd and perforatid for hit accordis with the cros precedyng except the pessyng in the myddys of the sayd shadoo. ¶ And then hit shall be sayd that he the wich berith this cros. latine. Portat vna crucem floridam patentem ombratam perforatam cum rubio in campo aureo

¶ Et gallice sic Il port or vng croys patee flowree ombree & percee de gowlez.

¶ Anglice He berith of golde a cros patent flurri shadoyd & perfyd with gowles.

Baseris moost be ware of theis armys ombratid of the wich: many wolues be shelued a fore. Not for the blasyng of theis certan armys sum ignorant men of thys crafte take the rule goyng a fore that is to wite of the colouris transmutid as ye sald a fore Not ther be certan nobuls and gentilmen in englonde the wich beere shadoys diuerse in theyr armys as lyon Antlop and other. and they that beere theys armis and hit be a lyon ye shall sai in latyn ¶ Portat vnum leonē ombratam in campo aureo ¶ Gallice. Il port or et vng leon ombree. ¶ Anglice. He berith of golde and a lyon ombratid. ¶ And men say that suche psonys as beer theys ombratid armys had there pgenitoris berying the same not ombratid but hole Not the possessionis & the patrimonyes descendid to other men. then the Newoys or Rynnysmen leuyng in goode hoope and trustyng to haue the possessionis of theis pgenitoris; beer theis armys ombratid. all oder differens a fore said leuig.

for when they haue that patrimony: that thai truistit on. soon thay may beer that lion or other beest of the same coloure the Wi; che theyr progenytoris bare. and it is bettyr to beer thos armis ombratit then holly to leff theyr progemtouris armys.

¶ Nitt here folowis an odie cros hemyt or bordrit as apperis

A Gret dowbte yit remaynys a nendys blasenis of armys i dyfferens betwix thys cros fimbriatit or bordrat. as he re now apperis and the forsayd cros ombratit. in so moch that they ar mych like. and yit appe; ris in the first sight that they be bot on. bot and a man behold Well ther is a gret differens. for the bordir of thys cros is variet as Well fro the coloure of the cros as fro the coloure of the felde. and elles is ther no dowbte. Therfore it shall be sayde of hym that beris theys armys in thys Wyse first in latyn thus.

Portat quam crucem nigram perforatam floridam patentem fimbriatam siue bordurratam cum argento in campo rubeo. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port de gullez ong croix flourelee patee per cee de sabult bordure dargent. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith gou les With a cros flurri patent persit of Sable bordrat V^t. Silu.

Now folowis an Ermyn cros as it shall be shewyd

For certan ther is an Ermyn cros. q hitt is a meruelus cros of ye Wich ther Was a di sputacion at london by a certan herwolde of Gre; tan. And it Was determynyt that theys armys may be in non other coloure bot as here it apperis And thys cros is calde an Ermyn cros. and it

Digitized by Google

ſhalt be ſayd of him that beris theys armys in thys wyſe as it ſhalt ſolowe . firſt in latyn thus . ¶ Portat quam crucem e; remmalem . Et gallice ſic . ¶ Il port long croys Eremmee Anglice ſic . ¶ He berith a cros ermyn And here ye moſt note that the coloure i theys armys ſhalt not be expreſſit for this cros ner theis armis may not be made bot of theys coloures that is to ſay allone of blacke and white the wich ar the propur colo ris of theys armys .

Sufficientli is ſpokyn of croſſis afore . nowe folowis an odir tretys of a ywerſe armys quarterit as here ſhalt be ſhewyt .

Off armys quarterit ſum ar armis quarterit playn Sum quarterit engradit . Sum quarterit iſtraſit . Sum quat terit inuecktyt . Sum quarterit indentat of the wich it ſhalt be ſpokyn euerich oon after othes . and firſt of tharmys playn

It ſhalt be ſhewyd firſt of armys quarterit playn.

Thre maner of wyſe armys may be quarterit . The firſt maner is oppyn whan . ij . ywerſe armys ar borne quar: terli as it is oppyn and playn in tharmys of the kyng of Fraun ce & of England And ye ſhalt ſay of hym y' beris theys armys thus as folowys. firſt i latyn Ille portat arma regis Francie & Anglie quarterata . Et gallice ſic . ¶ Il port lez armes de France et dangle terre quarteles . Anglice ſic . ¶ He beris tharmys of France & Englonde quarterli.

And it ſhall not be ſeene to no man that Fraunce is put be
fore Englonde i blaſyng. bot the cauſe is this. for thārmys of
Fraunce in armys be put afore and be haue a geñall rule þ
þe ſhenſumeū m armys be. ñ. colouris or moo i the poynt of the ſhel;
& then ye ſhall not begyn at the poynt to blaſe them. bot in the
right pte or ſide of thos armys. that ſame colour ther ſounde ithe
right ſide of yᵉ ſhelde is not the felde of tharmis. for it mai forthi
ne it is not the greteſt colour i tharmys aforſayd bot les or with
othir equall. and neū the les ye ſhall begyn to blaſe ther.

Off armys quartly borne how it ſhall be ſhewyd.

The ſecūde maner of wyſe of bering quarterit armys is
when. mm. diūſe armys quartili be borne as here is ſhewyt
And he that beris theys armys: beris. mm. diū
ſe armys quartli. latine ſic. Ille portat qua
tuor arma diūſa quartiata. Gallice ſic.
Il port quarter armes diūſez quartelez.
Anglice ſic He berith. mm. armys diūſe
quartli. And then if it be aſkyt how theys ar;
mys ſhulde be blaſit. The blaſer moſt begyn i the hyeſt cornell oū
the right ſide pceding to eūy armys. tharmys in the right ſide
blaſit: ye moſt go to the odir ſide & then to the thirde ſide & aſt to
the laſt. And ye moſt knowe that theys armys reherſit afore be
playn armys quarterat.

There is an othir mañ of bering of armys quartit when ñ ar;
mis quarterit be borne quartīli. and it is borne moſt i armis of
quenys and ſo bare that noble quene of Englond quene Anna
wyfe to that wyall prince kyng Richard the ſecunde: the which
bare tharmis of Englond & of Fraunce and of thempor of Al
mayn quartili & m. por. ptes. that is to ſay in the right ſide of

the shelde in the first quarter the bare charmys of fraunce . iij . flo redelucis of golde i a felde of asure . & i the secunde quart . iij Ti bartis of golde i a felde of gobbles . & i ye thirde quart an Egle splayd & . ij . neckis . & i the . iiij . a blake Lyon rampyng i a fel de of Silu . and so chaungeably the bare theys armys m . ꝑdi . quarteris the Wich seldyn is seen in any armys .

¶ Off armys quarterit and engraylyt now shall be shewyt

Now I shew yow y^t sum time We haue armys quarterit & engraylit . that is to Witt Whan eüy armys i his quart is engraylit as here apperis · & it shall be sayd of him y^t beris theis army thus . first i latyn ¶ Ille portat de auro & rubio arma quarteriata & ingra; data . Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port or et gobbles quartlee engraylee . Anglice sic ¶ He berith of golde & gelbles quarterly engraylit . And thi ar calde armys engradit for they ar made of . ij . colouris the Wich gradatly ar brought to gedir on colour in to an other colour

Off armys quaterit and iraſyt now I Will speke .

Certan armys thir be quarterit and iraſit as here apperis . the Wich certan armys ar cal led quarterit armys iraſit . for the colouris be ra; ſit obt as oon colour i raſyng Ware take albay from an othir . And it shall be sayd of him y^t be; ris theis armys in latyn thus . Portat arma quarteriata iraſa de albo & nigro · Gallice sic dargent et Sable quartlee iraſe . Anglice sic . ¶ He beris Siluer and Sable quarterely iraſyd .

¶ Il port

¶ He beris

Digitized by Google

Off armys quarterit inueckyt nolb here it ſhalk be ſhelbyt.

There be yet folbnde armys quartli inueckyt. or as ſum men ſay they be army quarterit of cololobris inueckyt as here apperis. the Bich for ſoth ar calde armis quarterit inuekit or of colobris inuecbyt. for i them ar .ij. colours quartli put: ye toon i to the othir. & ſo con colobris iuehit i to an othir. Therfore it is ſaid of hi ye beris theis armys i this Biſe firſt i latyn thus Ille portat quartiatim de aſurio et auro iuctis Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port quartli veire daſor et dor. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith quartli inuecbyt of aſure and golde.

Nolb of armys quarterit indenkyt it ſhalk here be ſhelbyd.

Quarterit armys be founde diuerſe the Bych ar calde indentit as here apperis: and they ar calde indentit for .ij. cobris con in to an othir by the man of teth ar indentit: as is oppn i the ſhelde. And thus ye ſhalk blaſe theym firſt in laty. Portat arma quarteriata identata de rubio et duro. Gallice ſic. Il port quarterilee endentlee de goblez et dor. Anglice. ¶ He berith quartli endentit of gobles and golde.

Off armys partit after the long Bay here ſhalk be ſhelbyt.

I intende nolb to determyn of armys partit after the longe Bay the Bich ctayn partyng aft the long Bay or on length is made many man of Byſe. ¶ The firſt ptycion for ſoth is

Digitized by Google

of .ij colouris in armys after the long Way in the playne man

¶ Ther is also a pteyng of armys of .ij. colouris ingradyt.
¶ And also ther is a pteyng of .ij. colobris inrasit.
¶ Also forsoth ther is a parteyng of .ij. colobris mueckyt.
¶ And ther is an othir parteyng of .ij. colobris endentit.
¶ Ther is also a pteyng of .ij. colobris clobdit or nbulatit.
¶ And more ouer ther is a pteyng of .ij. colobris Vaiery.

Fyrst I shedyd to yow that ther be certan armys partit after the long Way of .ij. colobris in the playn Way as here apperis i theys armys. And they ar calde ptit armys for they be made of .ij. colouris equali ptit. And he that beris theis armys beris thy i latyn. Ile portat arma partita plana secundum longum de asorio et albo. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port dasor et dargent playn ptee. Anglice sic. He berith asure and Syluer playn ptit.

¶ Off armys partil the long Way ingraylyt I Wilt shew here

Also ther is ptican of armys engraylyt the long Way as is said a fore bi engraylyng of .ij. colouris to gedir as here apperis. And theys armys ar calde armys engraylyt ptit after the long Way of siluer and Sable. And it shalt be sayd of him that berith thes armys i latyn thus. Portat arma ptita secundum longum ingradata de argento et nigro. Gallice sic ¶ Il port dargent ingraylee et Sable ptee du long. Anglice sic He berith Syluer and Sable ingraylyt ptit after the long Way.

Digitized by Google

, ere nowe it ſhalle be ſhewyd of armys partit and iraſit

The thrid maner of wiſe ar founde armys partit of .ij. co;
lowris & iraſit as here. of the wich it is to be ſayd: as
afore of quarterat armys iraſit. And he that
beris theys armys: beris in this wyſe as folowys
firſt in latyn thus. Portat arma ptita ſecundū
longum iraſa de argento et rubio. Gallice ſic.
¶ Il port ptee du long dargent et de gowlez race
Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith armys partit on
length of Siluer and gowles iraſit.

Off armys ptit the long way and inueckyt nowe I will ſpeke

Alſo the fourith maner of wyſe: armys partit ar borne af
ter the longe way of .ij. colowris inueckyt as here apperis
And theis armys be calde inueckyt for the colow
ris be put oon in to an othir on wunde wyſe.
And theys armys differ moch fro thaxmys nexte
beyng afore iraſit. Wherfore it ſhalle be ſayd of
hym the wich beris theys armys thus as it ſhalle
folowe firſt in latyn thus. Ipſe portat arma
partita ſecundum longum de colorubus albo et rubio inuectis.
Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port partee veere du long dargent et de
gowlez: Anglice ſic He berith partit inueckyt on lengthe
of Siluer and gowles.

Off armys partit on the long Way & indentyt wher it is shewyd

Sotheli an other maner of partyt armys ther is the Wiche is calde the fyfthe maner partyt after the long Way of .ii. colouris and theys armys ar called partytt indentytt. for thys cause that .ij. diuse colowris ar put to gethir: that is to say White and blac ar put to ged aft the man of menis tethe as it is sayd afore in the quarterit armys indentyt. And therfore ye shall say of hym the Wich beris theys armys in thys Wyse. first in latyn thus.

Portat arma partita secundum longum de argento et nigro indentata. Gallice sic. Il port partee endentee du long dargent & sable Et anglice sic. The beath armys ptit indentat on length of Syluer and Sable.

Off armys partyt aft the long Way clowdy or nebulatyd.

In the sept man of Wyse ther be armys borne partyt aft the long Way nebulatyt as here it shall be shewyd in this section. And theys armys be calde innebulatyd for .ij colowris ar put to gedre by the maner of clowdys. Therfore the possessor of theys armys be vis in thys Wyse as it shall be sayd first i latyn thus. Portat arma partita secundum longum de argento et asorio innebulata. Et gallice sic. Il port ptie du long dargent & dasor innewyde. Anglice sic. The beris armys partytt on length of Syluer and asure innebulatyt.

Off armys plyt Water of Syluer and golbles this ſtochon is

More ouer aſt theys armys aforeſayd yit ther be borne armys partyt after the longe Way . and they be Watery as here in this ſtochon it apperith . and theys armis ar calde Wattery : for .ij. colours ar incariet con in to an other by the maner of Water trobulde We ſhynde . And ye ſhalt ſay of him that beris theis armys in thys Wyſe as folowys : firſt in latyn . ¶ Portat arma plyta vndoſa ſecundum longū de argento et rubio . Gallice ſic . ¶ Il port ptice du long dargent et de golblez vndee . Et anglice ſic . ¶ He berith armys partyt the long Way of Syluer and golbles Wattery .

Nolb here I begynne to ſpeke of armys partyt ouerwart :

Here nolb folowys to ſe of armys plyt ouerwart . the Which certan partiaon ouerwart is made as many Wyſe as is the ptyaon on length . that is to ſay on the playn Way ouerWart . ingraylyt . iſraſit . inuectyt . indentit . innebula: tit . and Wattery . Werfore of theys certayn ſhalt be ſhelbyd by ſignys and firſt I begyne at playn armys oúlwart . as here it ſhalt be ſhe lbyd . And it ſhalt be ſayd of hym that berithe theys army in thys Wyſe firſt in latyn thus . ¶ Portat arma partita ptranſúſo plana de au ro ꝫ aſuro . Et gallice ſic . ¶ Il port ptice tranſúſie dor ꝫ daſor . Anglice ſic . He berith golde and aſure plat oúlwart ¶ Knalb ye that here is no colbre of that firſt rule : that is to ſay that a man ſhalt begyn at the poynt of the ſhelde to blaſe for here is as mych colour of golde as of aſure .

Digitized by Google

¶ Off armys irrasit oůlbart nolb here it shall be shelbyt.

NOlb of a nolthir maner of partycion of colouris in armis oůlbarte I will spekε. And it is calde irrasit as here it shall appere in this sechion. of the which it is to be sayd that the gentyll man the which berys theys armys berys in this maner as folowis. first in latyn thus. ¶ Portat arma partata eptransůso irrasa de auro et rubio Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port partiε transuerse irrase or et golilez. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith armys partyt ouerlbart irrasyt of golde and golbles.

NOlb of armys partyt oůlbartt ye shall haue an epemple.

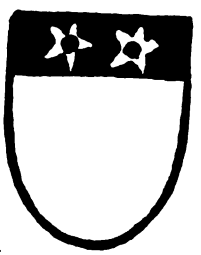
ARmys ther be also identyd oůlbart and partyt. And they be calde indentyd for theyre colowris as is sayd afore at put com in to an othir be the maner of menns tethe. And it shall be sayd of him that berys theys armys in thys wyse first in latyn thus. Portat arma ptita eptransůso identata de auro et asuro as afore is rehersit. Et gallice sic. Il port ptiε de trauers or et dasor endenter. Anglice sic ¶ He berith armys ptyt oůlbarte indentyt of golde and asure

And to rehersε moore of ptyt armys oůlbarte it nedis not for it is rehersyt sufficientli in the rules nept afore i armys ptyt on lengthe. Therfore it shall not be rehersyt here agayn. quia inutilis est repeticio eiusdem. and that is to say

It is an vnpfitabult rehꝛſyng of oon thyng to rehꝛſe the ſaame a gayn in the next ſentans. Therfore to ſpeke moore of azm: ys partat and figure theym: other of mgwaylit or irwaſit muec kyt indentit nebulatyt and vndatyt: it nedys not. for they be taght ſufficiently ỹ the long Way. ¶ And I beleue it ſhall be hard to fynde mony moo armys pfyt aft the long Way or oũ Wart then ar rehꝛſit a fore (Neũ the lees if any be founde or ſe: ne. in theym the ſame rules ſhall be obſeruit: as is rehꝛſit a fore. and it is enogh for all armys on that mañ to be blaſit that any gentylt man berith pfyt.

Off armys the Wich ar calde cheiff or an hede I Will ſhewe.

Sotheli certan men Wolde: pt theys armys after rehꝛſitt ſhulde be calde armys pfyt · the Wich certanli is for pt: that ther is no verri ptiçion of the colouris or any liclenes of dyuiſion of colouris. Certanly in armys ptit it is requyrit alWay that the plys of the colouris be equall. and that is not treWe in this figure. for the moore pte by mych is Silues. Therfore ye ſhall ſay of hym that beris theys armys thꝰ firſt in latyn. ¶ Portat de argento et caput ſuillide aſono cũ duabus maculis pforatis de auro. Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port argent long cheiff daſor et deux moletis ptees dor. Et anglice ſic. ¶ He berith Silues a Cheiff or a Cheſtan of aſure and ij. moletys pforat of golde.



Digitized by Google

¶ And ye ſhall knaw that i theys armys the rule afore ſaid tyn moſt be conſiderit that is to ſay: that at the toon it is to begyn to blaſe if that colowre of the toon be gretter or more co ppous colour in armys as it is ſayd afore And more ouer it is to be merkyt that no armis albe to be calde ptyt armis bot iff they be made of .ij. colouris onys partit and no more for armys palit ar not callit: nor albe not to be calde partyt armys alt thogh they be made of ij. colouris for thes colowris not al; lonli onys bot dyuerſe tymys ar partyt as here apperis And theys armys be calde palit armys for they be ma de bi the man of palis. And it ſhall be ſayd of hym that beris theys armys i latyn thus. Por tat arma palata de auro et aſorio. Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port pale or et aſor. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith pale of golde and aſure.

Off armys palit vndatit nowe here it ſhall be ſhewyt.

Palyt armys oftyme ar founde vndatyt that is to ſay Wattery as here apperis. And theys be calde palyt armys vndatyt to the differance of barrit armys vndatyt. the which armys barrit may alſo be vn datyt as after ſhall be ſhewyt. And it ſhall be ſayd of him that beris theys armys thus m latyn Portat arma palata vndata vel vnduſa de rubio et argẽto. Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port pale vndee de gowlez et argent. Et anglice ſic. ¶ He berith paly vndatyt of gowles and Siluer.

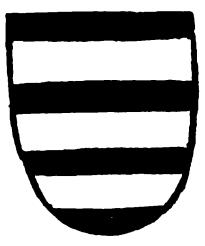
Digitized by Google

¶ Off azmys palit cwkyt and ſharpe nolb Ȝ will ſpeke.

LOke and behalde holb mony maner of wyſe thes palit az; mys be borne dyuerſeli. as it is ſhelbyt in thys boke. and theis azmys nolb ſhelbyt here: be calde palit cwkyt and ſharpe. for in theys azmys. ij. colo; ris paly az put to gethir: ony in to an othir cw; kyly and ſharpe. Therfore it ſhall be ſayd of hi the wich beris thes azmis in thys wyſe. firſt i la; tyn thus. ¶ Portat azma palata tortuoſa acu ta de nigro et argento. Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port pale dauncete de Sable et dargent. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith pale cwkyt and ſharpe of Sable and Syluer.

Off azmys barrit playn nolb here it ſhall be ſhelbyt.

HEre i thys chappitre afore is determynyt of palit azmis and in thys chappitre nolb folowyng it ſhall be deter; mynyt of barrit azmys. for the wich it ſhall be knolb that az; mys may be mony maner of wyſe barrit. and the firſt maner of wyſe is playn barrit. as here apperis. And ye ſhall knolb that ther be certain azmys barrit playn. and then ye ſhall nott nede to say i the blaſyng of theys azmys: he berith pla yne azmys barrit. But i all othir diſperyng az; mys barrit: ye moſt nedys declare the blaſyng of thym holbe thos barrit azmys differ from playn. for ſu be barrit wt a lyon raumpyng or a grehonde or odir beeſtis ꝛ ſu be barrit ꝛ



Digitized by Google

pollderit with ewes cwſlettys molettys Sceveſentis ſmale bridis or other difference bot as for theys playn armis afore ye ſhal ſay in latyn in thys wyſe. Portat arma barrata de argento & ni; gro Et gallice ſic. Il port barre dargent et Sale. Anglice ſic. He berith barri of Siluer and Sable

Off barrit armys vndatit nolb J wyll ſhelb as apperith.

Knalb ye for ċtan that armys barrit othir wile be barrit & vndatit that is to ſay Water. as here it apperith. And they be called barrit vndatit for they be made of .ij. colours me tyng to gedre by the maner of a floyng Watre as it is opyn afore. And ye ſhalt ſay of hym that beris theis armys i this wyſe. firſt i latyn thus Portat arma barrata vndata de nigro et albo Gallice ſic. Il port barru vndee de Sable et dargent. Anglice ſic. He beris barri vn datit of Sable and Siluer.

Off armys barrit and mueclyt ye ſhale haue exemple Barrit armys mueclyt ar borne of diuerſe gentill men. as here is ſhelbyd. And thay ar called mueclyt for in euery barre .ij. colouris ar put mueclyt by the ma ners of a rounde Way as is ſayd afore. And he y[e] beris this armys beris in thys wyſe. firſt in la; tyn thus. Portat arma barrata de coloribus rubeo et albo muectis. Et gallice ſic. Il port barri vevree de gobliez et dargent. Anglice ſic. He berith barri muet tyt of gobbles and Sil uer. And J begyn with gobbles for that colour is the firſt in the right cornell.

Digitized by Google

Off armys barryt crokyt and sharpe as here aft is shewit.

Gentill men ther be certanli the wich bere armis barrid crokyt and sharpe as here it apperith in theys armys. and thay be called armys barrit for differance of armys the same man of wyse palit: and thay be called crokyt and sharpe. for as it is sayd a fore. ij colowris ar put to gethyr crokytli and sharpe. Therfore it shall be sayd that the lorde the wich bere as theys armys berith in this wyse. first i latyn

Ille portat arma barrata torsuosa et acuta de nigro et auro. Et gallice sic Il port barri dauncetee acute de Sable et dor Anglice sic. The berith barris crokyt and sharpe of Sable and golde.

Now it shall be shewyd of armys that ar bendly barryt.

Ther be forsothe certan armys bendli barrit. and thei be called bendly barrit. and for this cause they be calde bendly barrit. for. ij. colouris ar iunyt to gether in euery barre bendly. as it is opyn here i theis armis And therfore it shall be sayd of him that beris theis armys: in this wyse as folowis. first in latyn thus. Ipse portat arma bendata de rubio et auro. Et gallice sic. Il port barre bendee de gowlez et dor. Anglice sic. The berith barri bendy, of Gowles and golde.

¶ Bot neuer the lees ye moſt dyligentli attende in the blaſyng of ſych armys: as palyt barrit and bendyt. for and they ben not ſuttelly conſauyt a man ſodanly onſwerying may lightly in thoos armys be diſſayuyt. For certanly thoos armys be callede palyt armys in the wich ar folwnde ſo many palys of oon colowre as ar of an other. And iff the palys of bothe the colowris ben not equalt thoos armys be not palyt.

¶ In diuerſe armys of gentilt men be folwnde. ij. palis of oon colowre. and. iij. of an other as here in theis armys folowyng it ſhalt be ſhewed. that is to ſay ther be. iij. palys of golbles and. ij. of golde for of the colowre of veede apperith. iij. partes in the ſhelde and bot ij. allone of the colowre of golde Therfore the gentilt man that berith theis armys: beris i this wiſe & thus ye ſhalt ſay of him. firſt in latyn thus.

Portat duos palos aureos in campo rubeo. Et gallice ſic.
¶ Il port de golbles et deup pales dor. Et anglice ſic.
He berith golbles and. ij. palis of golde.

Here ye ſhalt diligently merke armys barrit and lees barrid.

De moſt alſo dilygently attende to the nombre of both too colowris in armys palyt barrit or lees barrit of the wich lyttyll barris ye moſt be ware when thay be folwnde in armys. as here it is ſhewyd in theys armys. for ſych lynes be called lyttill barris to the diffe; rance of littill barris. And it ſhalt be ſayde that the gentilt man the wich berith theys armys beris in this thys wyſe firſt in latyn thus as folowis

¶ Portat vnam barram et duas baculas de albo in campo rubio. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de gobles vng barree et deux barrelettes dargent. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith gobles on barre and .ij. litelt barris of Sylver.

NOW I wylle spelke of armys barrid & litelt barris florishyt

BEholde how the forsayd letilt barris ar ochyrwyle made floryshyngli & than the be calde florishyt as here i thys scochon. And they be calde florishit: for they be made bi ye maner of a flowre delace. And ye shalt say of him that is possessor of theys armys i thys wise as followys. fyrst in latyn thus. Portat vnam barram et duas baculas floridas albas in scuto siue campo blodio. Gallice sic. Il port dasor vng barriee et deux barrelettes florit dargent. Anglice sic. HE berith asure on bar and .ij. litilt barris florishyt of Sylver.

NOW I intende to speke of bendys in armys as here.

OTherwyle thyr is borne in armys a bende as is founde i dyuerse armys of certan noble gentilmen as here now itt shalt be shewyt. And ye moost knawe that it is calde a bende the wich beggynnys at the right corner or the horne of the shelde: and discendith to ye lefte side of the same sheelde: to the differans of fisures or of litelt stawys of the wich it shalt be spokyn after. And of hym that has theys armys ye shalt say thus as folowys. fyrst in latyn. ¶ Portat vnam

Digitized by Google

bendam de rubio in campo aureo. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port dor long bende de gules. Anglice sic. ¶ He beth golde ẽ a bende of goules.

Off litell bendys in armys nowe here is an exemplle.

Knaw ye howe afore it is sayd that certan littyll barris ar borne i armys mony tymys. On the same maner of wise ar borne littill bendys as here it shall be shewyt. And they be calde bendyllys to the differans of grete bendys as it is opyn. And of hym that beris theys thy it shall be sayd. first in latyn as here folowys. Portat unam bendam & duas bendulas de auro i campo blodeo. Et gallice sic. Il port dasor long bendy et deux bendelettis dor. Anglice sic. He berith asure a bende and .ij. bendils of golde. And thes bendyls ar othirwyle florishyt as is shewyt in the figure a fore in barris. And in diuse armys they be founde that they be chenyt. and sum be powderit with molettis. and sum with odir dyfferans the which nedys not to be figurit here

¶ Off armys palit and bendyt howe here it shall be shewyde

The best maner of wyse certanly of beryng of dyuse armys in con sheelde is in theys bendys bering for a man that has a patrimony left by his fadyr. and other certan londys by his modyr cumyng to him to the which londys of his moderis ar appropurt armys of olde tyme for it may hap that theys armys coom to hir by the way and discent of hir progenyturis. then may the hayre and hym list

Digitized by Google

here the wolff armys of his fadyr in ye wolff sheelde. And if sythe a bende he may bere his moderis armys as here in the section after apperis. And it shall be sayd of him that beris theys armys in latyn thus. Portat arma palata de argento et rubio cum una benda de nigro. Gallice sic. Il port palee dargent et de gowles et vng bende de sabulle. Anglice sic. He berith palee of Sylver and gowles with a bende of sabulle.

¶ And wythyn wyle ī sythe a bende there is founde. iij. moletys or mascles of golde.

Off armys bende fusillyt here nowe I will expemplifie.

Now oftyn there be founde in armys other certain bendys to sū man straunge from theys. and here I wyll shewe to yowe a bende the which is calde a bende fusillit: as here apperith in this section. And it is calde fusillit for it is made all of fusillis of the which certain fusillis more shall be spokyn afftward. But he the which has theys armys beris in latyn thus. Portat vnam bendam fusillatam de auro in campo azorio Gallice sic. Il port dazor vng bendee fusillee dor. Anglice sic. ¶ He berith asure a bende fusillit of golde.

¶ And thys bende many tymys is borne with straungeris and specialli in Burgon.

Here nolb it ſhalt be ſpokyn of dyuerſe borduris i armys.

Bordures many and dyuſe ar founde i armys and ar bo:
ne of many nobult men e of the Vich ſum be playn. ſum i
graylit. ſum talentat. ſum playn polderit. ſum chekerit. ſum
gobonettyt. ſum mueckyt. of the Vicke it ſhalt be ſpokyn eúyche
oón after ordir. And firſt of playne borduris I Vill ſpeke as
here it aperis. And the bordure is calde playne
Vhen it is made playn of on colobre aloon. as
here in thys ſcochon. And it ſhalt be ſayde of hym
that is poſſeſſor of theys armys firſt in latyn thus
Portat tres roſas rubias in campo argenteo
cum una bordura de rubio. Et gallice ſic.
Il port dargent trois roſes de goulez et ung bordúre de go
bles. Et anglice ſic The berith Siluer. iij. roſis of gob:
les and a bordure of gobbles.

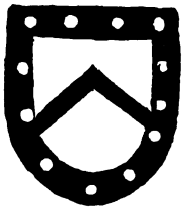
Off armys bordurit and ingraylit nolb here ſolobys exemple

ARmys Vith a bordure ingraylit ofter Vhile ar borne of
certan nobult men as here nolb is ſhelbit in thys ſcochon.
And ſpeke a bordure is calde a bordure ingraylit
for the colobre of hym is put gre by gre in to the
felde of tharmys as it is opyn here. And the poſ
ſeſſor of theys armys beris i latyn tong thus as
ſolobys. Portat arma de auro fymbriata ſi:
ue borduata de nigro ingradata cum tubus macu:
lis perforatis de nigro. Gallice ſic. Il port dorſtois mul:
lettis perforatee de Sable ung bordúree ingraylee de Sable.
Anglice ſic. The berith golde. iij. molettis perforatit of Sa
bulk and a bordure ingraylit of Sabulk.

Digitized by Google

NOw of armys bordrit and talentit I will shew yow exemple.

THer is borne in armys a certan bordure talentit as here. And it is not necessari here to expres the colowre of the talentis or besantis: for thay be euer of golde. And it shalt be sayd of him that beris thes armis in thys wyse first in latyn thus. ¶ Portat vnum signum capitale de rubio in campo albo bordu ratum cum rubio talentatim. Gallice sic. Il port dargent vng chyuron de gowlez bordu; ree de gowlez talentee. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith siluer a Chyueron of gowles bordurit with gowles talentyt.



¶ Off armys bordurit hauyng .ij. Chyuerons of siluer &c.

VNderstonde ye that certan tymys a bordure is borne in armys powderit dyuerse ways other wyle with molettis with rosis or with littylt crossis or with besantis or odei dyuise. And it is calde a bordure powderit when any thyng is in that bordure: of what sum eu signe it be. as it is sayd a fore. and theys signys as rosis moletis and other ar not countit for ytan nombur: for ye nombur of that powderyng excedis the nombur of xij And then y^t bordure is calde powderit as here. And ye shalt say that the possessor of theys armys beris in this wyse as folowys. first in latyn thus. ¶ Portat vnum scu;

em

tum de rubio cum duobus signis capitalibus de albo et vna bordura pulūrsota cum talentis. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de goules deux Chauerons argent et vng bordure de goules poldrez talentee. Anglice sic. He berith goules .ij. Chauerons of Syluer and a bordure poldrit with besantis.

¶ Nit hyr is an other maner bordure that is calde Chekert.

We haue yit an other bordure in armys the which is calde a bordure chekkerit. And it is calde a chekkerit bordure for hit is made of .ij. colours by the maner of a Chekker as here it apperis. And it shall be sayd of hym the which berys the ys armys in this wyse as folowys. first in latyn thus. Portat vnam crucem rubiam plana in campo argenteo cum vna bordura scacata de nigro et argento. Et gallice sic. Il port argent vng croys playn de goules bordurez chekkez de Sable et argent. Et anglice sic.

He berith Siluer on croys playn of goules a bordure chekkerit with Sabull & Siluer.

Off bordurys gobonatit nold hyre is an exemplll.

Wan ye more oū that yit by side theys armys the which haue spoke of afore thi bordurys: ther is an other bordure that is calde a bordure gobonatit. as here it shall be shewyt i thys fooehon nept folowyng. And hit is calde gobonatyt for

hit is made of ij. colouris quadrelli ioynyt. y' is to say of blacke & White . & of hym that beris thys armys ye shall sey in latyn thus as folowis ¶ Portat de argento & duas bendas de nigro cū una bordura de nigro et albo gobonata . Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port dargent deux bendes et vng bordure de sable et dargent Anglice sic . ¶ He berith syluer ij bendys of Sable With a bordure gobonatit of Sable & siluer

¶ And thys same bordure bare that nobull prynce thy duke of Gloucestyr brothyr to that nobull Werriour kyng henri the fifth : the Which royall duke bare in his armys the holl armys of Fraunce and of Englond quartly With a bordure gobonatit of Siluer and sable as is shewyt in diuerse places . And to blase theys armys it nedis not to be rehersit . for it is sufficiently taght afore in diuerse places.

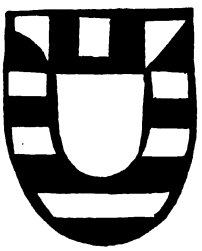
¶ Item of bordurys had in armys of colowris inuekyt.

Here be yit bordurys i armys of ij. colowris inuekyt . as here in thys figure appe; ris . and hit is calde a bordure inuekyt for hit is made of . ij. colowrys to gedyr inuekyt . And ye shall say of hym the Which berith theys armys in latyn thus . Portat arma quartiata de rubio et auro cum vna bordura de argento et nigro simul inuectas . Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port quartelee de goules et dor ouesq

Digitized by Google

vong bordure verre dargent et de sable . Anglice sic
¶ The berith quarcly gobbles and gold with a bordure muele bayt of siluer and sable .

Bott i thes bordurys ther is a greele differans emog men pretendyng theym eyple and vyse m thys sciens aspe: cially it is oppn i tharmys m olde tyme of therle of Marchy whed they shulde be calde bordurs or not . as here i thys figure . And certan men say y' men not puttyng a mezueles differans of blasyng say : that the for sayd Erle of marche the riche vos calde Roger Mortememer when that he leuyd bare armys in latyn in thys vyse to say ¶ Portauit arma pala ta barrata et contraconata de asorio z auro aim vno simplici scuto de argento . Gallice sic . ¶ Il port pale barree girone dasor z dor et vng escu simple dargent . Anglice sic . ¶ The berith pale barri contrari conyt of asure ẽ golde with a sĩple shelde of silũ.



¶ And this oppnyon asore rehersit in the blasyng plesyt many a man the rich m no mañ of whise may be trib . For if thes armys as it is sayd asore bar contrari conatat · then the lalbist corner or the coone of tharmys that is to say the lalbyst poynt of the shelde may neũ be of on colobre as certanly it is of asure .

Over theys thyngys asore rehersit in theys armis it is ċtan that in all armys contrari conyt all the conys of what sum eũ colobre tharmys be made they mete to gedyr conally in the middis of the shelde . as in the nept figure of the shelde oppnly it shall

Digitized by Google

be shelbyd. Wherfore as it apperith to my reson trulier they shal be blasit on this wyse: except the greter autorite that the forsayd Erle of Marche berith thus in latyn. Portauit arma barrata et caput scuti palatum & angulatum de asorio & auro cum quodam scuto simplia de argento. Et gallice sic. Il port barree et vng Chieff pale ainecte dasor & dor et vng escu simple dargent. Et anglice sic. The berith barri and a Cheff pale angulatit of asure and golde With a symple shelde of Siluer.

Off armys contrari conyt here I Wil informe yow

Ther be yit for sooth diuerse noble men the Wich bere armys contrari conyt. as here in thys scochon apperith. And theys armys be calde contrari conyt for this cause. for alle the colouris of theys armys meete to gedir at on coone. that is to say at the myddyst poynte of the shelde only. For euy body triangulit is moore of lengthe then of brede and naamly conyt vot pz. Therfore the oppynyon of thos men the Wych sayd that the armys afore rehersit: that is to Witte of ther; les armys of Marche Warpalyt barrit and contrari conyt is to be repœuyt. for so mych that the conys of the forsayd armys

accorde not the Wich of neceſſite ſhulde accorde iff the forſayd opy nyon Wer trib. And of hym that beris theys armys ye ſhalle ſay in latyn. Portat arma contrapanata de blodio et albo Et gallice ſic. Il port giwne dasor et dargent. Anglice ſic. He berith contrara conyt of aſure and ſiluer.

Off pilit armys nolb here it ſhalle be ſhelbyt:

For as mych as it is ſpokyn afore of armys: in the Wich the colowris mete to gedyr in the myddiſt poynt wonly. Nolb folowyth of certan armys in the Wich iij. pi; lis mete to gedyr in on woone. as here in thys fi; gure. And it ſhalle be ſayde of hym the Wiche be; rys theys armys in latyn in thys Wyſe.

Portat tres pilas nigras in campo aureo. Gallice ſic. Il port dor treis piles de ſable. Et anglice ſic. He berith golde. iij. pilis of ſable

Off ballis in armys here nolb it ſhalle be ſhelbyt.

Neuer the les ye moſt conſydyr a differans i theys blaſyn gys of theys armys afore: and theys that ame after Wen ye blaſe theym in latyn tong. for other Whyle thys terme pila i latyn is take for to be a peeſe of tymbre to be put vnder the palor of a brygge: or to ſyche a like Werke as i theyempulk afor And odyr Whyle this terme pila is take for a certan rounde iſtru mēt to play Wt: the Wich iſtrumēt ſuys other Whyle to the hande

and then it is calde in latyn pila manualis as here
And other while it is an instrument for the foote
and then it is calde in latyn pila pedalis a fote bal
Therfor it shall be sayd of hym that berys thes ar
mys in latyn Portat tres pilas argenteas
in campo rubio. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de
gobelez trois pelettit dargent. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith
gobles iij. ballis of Siluer.

Certanly ye most merke that in this figure of ballis a mā
may soon er. Wherfore shortly it is to be knawb that sich
ballis may haue all colowrys bot the colowre of golde for þt
be of goldyn colouris: they shulde be calde talentis or besantis the
Riche be in of golden colowre.

Off tortellys or litill Calys in armys.

Ther be also tortellis yt be litill Calys
the Rich be grettir then ballys & tharmys
be truly made as here it is open. And he that be
rys theys armys berys in this Wyse first in latyn.
¶ Portat tres tortellas rubias in campo aureo.
Gallice sic. ¶ Il port dor et trois torteulx de
gobelez. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith golde & iij. Calys of
gobles.

More ouer merke: that as Wele ballys in armys as kalis
and besantis all Way ar holle wlonde figuris & not pforat

Off fontans or Wellis here I Will speke.

Nou the les ther be cōn nobull men the Which bere sich
rounde figuris: the Which figuris ar calde fontanys or Wellis as here ap

peris. the Wich fontans eũmore moſt be of Whyte colowre for the thyng the Wich they repreſent. For they repreſent eũmore the colowre of the Water of a Well the Wich is Whyte And of hym ye beris thes armys ye moſt ſay in latyn thus. Portat tres fontes i campo aureo. Gallice ſic Il port dor et trois fonteyns. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith of golde and .iij. Wellis.

Off ryngys the Wich be other rounde inſtrumentis I Will ſpeke After theis rownde figuris a fore rehersyt ther be cian figuris the Wich be pforatit as be ryngys: as here apperis. And it ſhall be ſayd of hym that beris theis armys i latyn thy. Per tat tres anulos aureos i campo nigro. Gallice ſic Il port de ſable et trois anulettis dor. Anglice ſic. He berith Sabull and .iij ryngys of golde

¶ Off tractys in armys.

Afore it is ſayd of bordurs i armys. now it ſolowith to ſe of tractis or lynys. and firſt of a ſymple tract. and they be calde tractis for as mych as the felde remaynyng of tharmys as Wele With i as With owte. & any other lyne is dralyn of an other colowre as here: to the man of a ſhelde. And it ſhall be ſayd of hym that beris thes armys i latyn. Portat vnũ tractũ ſiplicem planam aureũ i campo aſoreo Gallice ſic. ¶ Il port dasor vng trace playn dor. Anglice ſic ¶ He berith aſure a playn tract of golde.

Off a tract ingraylyt on booth the ſydys here is an exemple. A tract or a lyne othir While is ingraylyt on booth the partes as here in thys fygure apperith. And then it ſhall

be ſayd of hym that beris theys armys i thys wy ſe firſt in latyn thus · ¶ Portat unum tractū ep utraque parte igradatum de auro in campo rubio Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port de gowlez ung trace ingraple de cheſtim coſte dor. Anglice ſic. He berith gowles with a tract ingrayle on bo; both the ſidys of golde.

¶ Off a tract dowbult and florifhyt it ſhalt be ſhewyt.

Thys tract is other wyle dowbult as in tharmys of the Kyng of Scottelonde. as here in this ſcochon apperis · & the forſayd Kyng of Scottelond beris i thys wy ſe firſt in latyn thus. Portat duplicem tractum cum floribus gladioli contrapoſitis et unō leone rapaci de rubio in campo aureo. Et gallice ſic. Il port dor ung dowble trace floretee countree et ung leon rampant de gowlez. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith golde a dowble trace florifhyt contrari and a lyon rampyng of gowles.

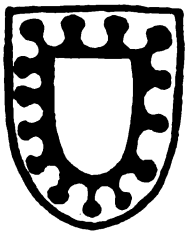
Off tractis triplatit and quatriplatit othyrwyle.

Alſo of theys armys afore rehyrſit I fynde more dyuerſite for ther be certan nobult men the which bere theys tractis triplatit as here in thys fygure. and ſum bere hit quatriplatit as is founde i diuiſe armis. And ye ſhalt ſay of him that beris theys armys triplatit i latyn thus. ¶ Portat tractum triplicatū de al bo i campo aureo. Gallice ſic. Il port dor ung trace triplee dargent. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith golde a trace triplatit of Siluer.

Digitized by Google

Off a tract ſympull of .ij. colobris and mueckyt an epemple

Ther be other nobull men the Wich bere a ſimpull tract of .ij colobrus mueckyt as here nolw it ſhall be ſhellyt in thys ſtochon . And the poſſeſſor of theys armys beris in this Wyſe as colobris firſt in latyn . Portat vnum tractum ſimplicem de coloribus aſurio az; gerleo muectis in ſcuto aureo . Et gallice ſic . Il port vng trace ſimple vere daſur et dargent Anglice ſic . He berith golde and a tract ſymple mueckyt of aſure and Siluer .



After tractis nolw it ſhall be ſpokyn of fyſſuris or ſtauys .

Afore theys fyſſuris it is ſpokyn of bendys : and their diſ; ferans . Nolw it ſhall be ſpokyn of fyſſuris . the Wych c̃ tan fyſſuris or ſtauys begynne in the lefte horne of the ſhelde : ẽ az dralbne to the right parte of the ſhelde beneeth to the diffe ran ce of bendys the Wych begynne in the right horne of the ſhelde ẽ az dralbne to the lefte ſide of the ſhelde beneeth . and thys May moſt the fyſſure be dralbne as here apperis i thys fygure . And ye ſhall vndirſtonde that theis fiſ ſuris differ as mony Ways as the forſayd bendys dyfferyt . bot it nedys not to be rehyrſyt for it is playn ſhellyt afore . Ther be fyſſuris or ſtauys playn . mgradyt . mueckyt . and fuſyllatit . as I ſayd afore in the place of bendys . And theys ſtauys baſtaz; dys az Wont to bere or namli thay ſhulde bere thaym . And then thys fyſſure is calde a ſtaffe . ẽ i french it is cald a baſton

Digitized by Google

Bot commynli it is calde a fiſſure for as mych that he cleuys his faderis armys m, ij partes for that baſtard is clouyn and deuydyt from the patrimony of his fadyr. And ſo ſych a baſtard is forbedyn to bere the hoolle armys of his fader for the reuerans of his blode. bot his faderis armys he may bere with ſych a ſtaffe as is ſayd afore: m ſigne and finalle declaracon of his baſtardy and to the differance of propur and naturalle bayre of his fader. And when ye haue any ſych a playn fiſſure or a ſtaffe i armys or ingraylit inuecklyt or fuſillatit: of that ſame ſtaffe ye ſhalle ſay as a fore is reherſit in the chapiture of bendys moore playnli. And the baſtarde the which berith theys armys poſſeſſis in latyn on thys maner as nolb here folobys.

Portat vnam fiſſuram ſiue baculum aureum i campo aſurio.
Gallice ſic. Il port baſor et vng fees or. Anglice ſic
The berith aſure and a fiſſure or a ſtaffe of golde.

Nolb here I beggynne to ſpeke of armys hedyd as it apperis.

Ther be certan nobulle men the which bere armis hedit as here it apperith. And ye moſt knalb that theis armys be called hedyt: when the hyer parte of the ſhelde that is to ſay the hede is made of on coloure or of moo then of on. & that parte extendys not to the myddis of the ſhelde as aboon is ſhewyt by the ſhelde.

And knabe ye that in the hedit armys is a good man of bezyng of dyuſe armys as by fortune ſu noble man has mony londis and grete lordſhippys by his mo; dyr for the which londys of his moderis he intendys to bere the armys of his modyr. and ſo he may do for it is rightbys.

Digitized by Google

¶ Bot he that dyſcendys of a nobull fadyr or of a gentill man. by the wych he had any ſimple patrimony. then ſych a nobull man: and he will: may bere the hoolt armys of his moodyr in the ladyr parte of his ſchelde. and in ſych an hede as I ſayd a fore he may and he will bere the hoolt armys of his fadyr
¶ And it ſhall be ſayd of hym that beris theys armys i thys wy ſe fizſt in latyn thus. ¶ Portat ſinum ſignum capitale de nigro in campo aureo cum duo capite rubeo et tribus talentis i eodem. Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port de vng cheueron de Sabull et vng Cheff de goulez et trois beſantis en la meſmes. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith golde a cheueron of Sabull & a Cheff of goules and .iij. beſantis ther in.

¶ And ther be certan nobull pſones the wich beer in the ſchelde afore reherſit of golde as is ſayd a fore a Cheueron of Sabull or of ſum odyr colowre and .iij. rede roſis or whyte or ſum other ſygnys as croſſis croſſantis bendys or flowris and a cheff ſum of Sabull ſum of other colowre with the ſigne of moletis or oder tokynyng the wich need not to be reherſit. And then ſhall euerich oon of theym be blaſit in his nombur like as the felde and the ſignes require: as by fortune ſum men beere thus to ſay. He berith Sabull a Cheueron of golde .iij. rede roſys of goules a Cheff of aſure with .iij. molettys perforatit of pert and thus of all other differanſys.

Off armys palit with oon quarter of an other colowre.

¶ Certanly ther be ſum nobull men the wych bere in ther armys oon quarter of an other colowre dyfferyng from the

colour or the colours of the shelde as here . in the
which armis it is to be sayd that the nobull man the
which beris theym berith in this wyse first in latyn .
Portat arma palata de aserio & auro cum una
quarteria ermetica . Et gallice sic . Il port
palee dasor et dor ung quart dermyn . Et anglice
sic . He berith paly asor and golde with on quart of Ermyn .

¶ And it is to be notit that ye most haue a respeckyt to the co
lour of that pale the which shulde ascendee to the right horne of the
shelde iff that quartez wez not thez . and i that colour ye most
eu moore begyn to blase thoos armys like as the quart were not
thez as asor is rehersit .

Nolb of armys chekkerit here ye shall haue an exemple .

More ouez other whyle we se armys chekkerit as here nolb
it apperith in thys figure folowyng and they be calde ar;
mys chekkerit when they ar made of . ij . colouris to
the maner of a chekker . And theys armys resay;
ue many differens as in kydys or quarteris i bar
ris and bendis and other wyles i Chuerons of ye
which it shall be spokyn a noon folowyng . And of
hym the which possessis theys armys ye shall say in
latyn thus . Portat arma scaccata de aserio et auro . Et
gallice sic . ¶ Il port scaccke dasor et dor . Anglice sic .
¶ He berith Chekkez of asure and golde

f 1

Off Chyuerons the Rich i englisſh ar calde colopils of ſparris

We haue ſotheli in armys certan ſignys the Rich ar calde Chyuerons in french. And they be calde in latyn Signa capitalia vel tigna. and in engliſh a colopult of ſparras as here is ſhelopd i theys ſignes: the Rich ſignes by liklenes firſt War borne of carpentares and makeris of holoſes. for an holoſe is neu made pfite tyll thoos ſparris be put a pon hit: by the maner of an hede. and .ij. ſyche ſparris or chyuerons ionyt to gedyr make a capitall ſygne. ꝑt is to ſay a colopult of ſparris. and other while .ij. ſyche be borne i armys and othyr while .iij. odyr while .iiij. as it is knalopn. And of him that beris theys armys afore ye ſhall ſay thus aſfolopys firſt i latyn. Portat de rubro et duo ſigna capitalia de auro cū tribus talentis. Et gallice ſic. Il port de golpz et deup Chyuerons dor et trois talent. Anglice ſic. He berith golples and .ij. Chyuerons of golde Rich iij beſantis.

Off a Chyuron or a ſygne capitall engralyt here is ſhelopt.

Alſo a Chyueron is othir while engralyt as here and then it is to be ſayd of hym the Rich beris theys armys in latyn in thys poſe. Portat vnum ſignum capitale ingradatum de albo in campo aſpreo. Et gallice ſic. Il port dalor vng Chyueron dargent engrayles. Anglice ſic. He berith aſure and a Chyueron of Sylues engralyt.

Digitized by Google

¶ Off dyuerse and mezuelus Chyuerons yit I Will spehe.

More ouer yit i theys signys of Chyuerons other While is
folbnde a dolbte m the blasyng of theym. Wlyn thei be ma
de of dyuerse cololbris transmutat as here m this
scochon apperith. And of hym the Wych beris thes
armys ye shalt say m latyn. ¶ Portat arma
quarterata de nigro & argento cum vno signo ca;
pitali de dictis coloribus transmutatis. Gallice
sic. Il port quarterlee de sable & argent & vng
Chyueron chaungee lung de laultre. Anglice sic. ¶ He be;
rith quarterly Sable and Silver With a Chyuron of the sayd
cololbris transmutat.

Off Chyueuerons differyng on the longe Way:

Also theys signes or Chyurons be differut after the long
Way m armys as here m this figure apperith. And then
of hym the Wich beris theys armys ye shalt say m
lati. ¶ Portat arma partata secundum lõgu de co;
lorabus albeo & rubeo cum vno signo capitali de
dictis colorabus transmutatis. Gallice sic.
Il port partie du long de dor & gobley vng chy;
ueron chaunge lung de laultre. Anglice sic.
¶ He berith party after the longe Way of .ij. colouris golde and
goules With a Chyuron of the sayd cololbris transmutat.

¶ Off colbtis emong herwoldis i blasyng theys armys suyng

Among othyr colbtis: a bolbte the blasyng of tharmis here
solobyng nolb neyt I haue herde herwoldys pretendyng

Digitized by Google

theym ſelfe veri conyng in blaſyng of armys mer
ueluſli to dreeme in the blaſyng of theys armys.
And ſum holde oon opynyon and ſum an othyr.
neuer the les it is no gaate neede to dobte in the
blaſyng of theym as to conyng men. Therfore
of hym yᵗ beris thes armys ye ſhall ſay in latyn.

Portat duas ptes capitis ſcuti de rubio & ciam ptem de albo ad modum ſigm capitalis et tres roſas de coloribus tranſmutatis. Et gallice ſic. Il port lez deux ptes du chief de gobbez et le troiſsme dargent ptiez en manere du cheuerō et trois roſes lung de laultre. Anglice ſic. He berith .ij. parties of the hede of the ſhelde gobbles and the thrde pte Siluer by the maner of a cheueron and .iij. roſes of the ſame colobras tranſmutit.

Off armys fuſyllit in engliſh ſpyndyllis nob I Will ſpeke.

There be certan gentylmen and nobuls the Bich bere in theyr armys fuſellis: of the nombur of the Bich: my lorde of Glaucester yᵗ nobull prince vncle to Kyng henri the sept Bas. For he had in his armys .iij. fuſillis of gobbles by the man of a bar in a felde of ſiluer the Bich etan armys this nobull duke bare by the reſon of certan londis he; longyng to the mounte. Bot ye ſhall ſay of hym that beris theys armys in this ſcochon in latyn thꝰ

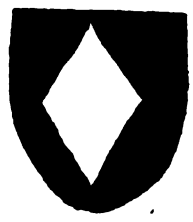
Portat de rubio et tres fuſulos de argento. Et gallice ſic. Il port de gobbez et trois fuſulez dargent. Anglice ſic. The berich gobbles and .iij. fuſules of Siluer. And otherbyle theys .iij. fuſules or .iiij. be borne by the maner of a paale.

Digitized by Google

It is to be notit that when .iij fusules or .ij. ar borne or moo to the nombur of .iij. the bich nombur if thei excede: say euermore that thos armys be poldrit with fusillis or other thyngys and noon othyr wyse. ¶ And so generalli ye most knaw that iff any thyng be borne in armys ouer the nombur of .iij then thoos armys what sum euer they be thay ar poldrit.

Off oon fusylt borne in armys here I will exemplifi.

Other while oon fusylt is borne allon in armys as here i thys figure it apperith. in bich mater I haue herd certan herroddis dowte in theyr oppynyonys. Neu the lees it is ctan that ye shall say of hym the bich beris theys armys with owte dowte i latyn thus as follois. Portat de rubio cum uno fusulo de auro Et gallice sic. Il port de gowlez ung fusilt or Anglice sic. ¶ He berith gowles and a fusilt of golde.



Off ony fusylt of dyuerse colowris now here I will speke.

Also theys fusyllis sum tyme ar borne of dyuerse colowris as here in thys figure it is shewyd. Bot it is a moore dowte how theys armys shuld be blasit then thar: mys afore. bot ye shall say i latyn of hym the bych bas thes armys in this wyse. Portat arma partita ep transuerso de albo et nigro cum uno fusulo ep eisdem colorabus transmutatis. Et gallice sic. Il port partie de trauers dargent et sable et ung fusylt de mesmes colours lung de lautre. Et anglice sic

fy

He berith armys partit ouer Wark of Siluer & sable Bith a fusyll of the saam colowrs transmutat.

Off fusyllis by the maner of a bende here I Will sum Wat say.

More ouer sych fusyllis ar borne in armys by the maner of a bende. as here nolb apperith And then ye shall say of hym the Bich possessis theye armys in thie Wyse fyrst in latyn thus. ¶ Portat pnam bendam fusillatam de auro in campo rubeo. Et gallice sic Il port de gowlez ong bende fusylt dor. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith gowles and a bende fusyllit of golde.

¶ Off a bar fusyllit in armys here is an exemple.

Also ther be borne in armys theys fusyllys in a bar fusyllit as here it apperith. And then it is to be sayd of hym the Bich hath theys armys in latyn thus. ¶ Portat de rubio cum pna barra fusillata de argento. Gallice sic. ¶ Il port de gowlez ong barre fusulee dargent. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith gowles and a bar fusyllyt of Siluer. And sum men say that the forsayd armys began of Beueris for as mych as Beueris wse sich fusillys made of sponnyn Wott

Knalbe ye yᵉ differans bitwix ffusillis Masculis & Losyngy

Nolb here ye shall knalb the differans be twix fusillis masculys and losyngys. Wherfore it is to be knalb that

Digitized by Google

fuſyllis ar euer more long alſo fuſyllis ar ſtraityr ouerwart in the baly then ar Maſcules. And Maſcules ar larger oüwartt in the baly: and ſhorter in length then be fuſyllis. as here i this ſcochon it apperith. And it ſhall be ſayd of hym that poſſeſſis theys armys in this wyſe · firſt i latyn. Portat de rubio ꝙ ſex maſculas de auro. Et gallice ſic. Il port de goulles et. vi. maſcules dor: Et anglice ſic. The berith goulles and ſex maſcules of golde.

And theys maſcules other while ar pforatit as I ſayd ofore in the chapiture of the cros maſculatit.

Off an othyr maner of maſcules yit here I will ſpeke.

Alſo other while ar borne armys maſculatit as here now in this figure folowyng is ſhewyt. And ye ſhall vnderſtande that thos armys be calde maſculatit in the wich the forſayd maſcules begyn moſt plentyfully in the right angle of the ſhelde. and ar endid towarde the leſte pte. the wich certan armys in ürdred ar palit. ꝙ ar deuydit i to. iij. palys yf thei be ſubtile conſapuyt. And of hym that beris theys armys it ſhall be ſayd i this wyſe firſt in latyn. Portat ar; ma maſculata de argento ꝙ aſorio. Et gallice ſic Il port dargent et dasor maſculee. Et anglice ſic. The berith of Silues and aſure maſculatit.

Off losyngys how and what maner of wyse they be made.

Also losyngye no maner of wyse be made bot armys bendit. ner they may not be made by ther selfe. and they be made all way as thrys be made bendit. And ye shall haue the moste perey differans by twix the forsayd masculatit armys and bendid in the pretias of the forsayd armys. And ye most take thys for a generall enformacion and instruccion that certanli losyngy eúmore stande vpraght: that is to say that the heyst poynt or the heght: eú ascendis to hauen or to a marnye hed. so that the heyst poynt extendys verily to the hed of the shelde. and of the ouerwart corneris oon extendis verily to the right side. and that other corner extendys to the left side of the shelde. and the lawist parte extendys to the lawist parte of the shelde dyametralit as it is opyn in the shelde next afore. And so wich olde wolde we haue the differans of the forsayd signes. that is to wete of Mascules and Losynges. Nota also the forsayd fusyllis neuer be founde pforatit ner losyngys afore sayd be neú pforatit.

Nolb of a signeî armis yt is calde a Saltori a mañ of a cros

There is an other maner of signe in armys: by dyuse nobull men borne: the wich is calde a Saltori. and it is made by the mañ of a cros of Saynt andrelle as here nolb it apperith. And thys cros is licensyt after certan men to an instrument made in dyuerse partys the wich is of a grete magnytude or largenes: to the comparison of thys signe. And it is welle knolb of nobull gentilmen and

Digitized by Google

huntteris that ſych ſaltatories ar ordant in mony parthys & pla-
as to take wilde beeſtys the wich onys their enterynge: by thatt
inſtrumente may neu goo a gayn. Wherfore in olde tyme thes
ſignys were geuyn to rich men. and ony otherwyſe calde auaris
Nygonys or keperis the wich men ſuffir not their treſures i what
maner of wyſe they be getyn: to paſſe from theym. And of
hym the wich poſſeſſis theys armys ye ſhall ſay in latyn. Por-
tat de aſorio et ynum ſaltatorium de auro. Et gallice ſic.
I l port dasor yng faultere dor. Et anglice ſic. The
berith aſure and a Saltory or a ſalbter of golde.

Off armys ſalbtrie engradit here I will exemplifi.

Hob here ye moſt knaw that theys armys Salbtre be o-
ther while engradit as here in thys figure nolo apperith
And they they be calde ſalbtre engradit as it is
ſayd afore in mony placis. as of the cros ingradit
of barris and bendys. And of hym that beris
theys armys ye ſhall ſay in latyn. Portat o-
num ſaltatorium ingradatum de auro in campo a-
ſorio. Et gallice ſic. I l port dasor yng ſaul-
tier dor engrayler. Et anglice ſic. The berith aſure and
a cros ſalbtre of golde engradit.

Off many crosſis ſalbtre borne in armys ingradyt an exemple

Other while ther be borne mony crosſis ſalbtre i armys en-
gradit in oon ſhelde. other while .ij. other while .iij. as

ſ o

here · And of hym that berys theys armys thus it shall be sayd in latyn. ¶ Portat vnam barram planam et tria saltatoria engrailed de auro in campo rubeo. Et gallice sic ¶ Il port de gold; lez long barre playn et trois saultiers engrailez dor Et anglice sic. He berith goldes oon bar playn and iij. salbere crossis engradyt of golde.

Off Cowbnys in armys borne by the maner of a pale.

It is diligently to be markyt that when we say sich a lorde berith in sych sygnys. Hold theys. iij. signes ar borne in armys we say not all way. For other while theys. iij. signys ar put in a shelde by the mauer of a pale. And then thay be calde signes palit. as here in thys figure it apperith. And of hym that bas theys armys ye shall say in latyn. Portat iij. coronas de auro palatas in campo azorio. Et gallice sic. Il port dazor et trois cownes dor palez. Anglice sic He berith asure and iij cwnys of golde palit.

Off cowbnys in armys borne barrit here I will informe yow

Hold theys. iij. signes other while be borne barrit here nold apperith in thys figure. And then of hym that berys theys armys ye shall say in latyn. ¶ Portat tres coronas aureas in campo azorio. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port dazor et et trois cownes barrez dor. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith asure & iij. cwnys of golde barritt.

Digitized by Google

Off .iij. Crowns borne in the Corneris of the shelde.

Certanly theys .iij crowns be borne in the most comyn Way in the corneris of the shelde as here in thys scochon it apperith. And then ye most thus say that thes .iij signes be borne in the corneris of the shelde. for that is the most comune & the mooste famust maner of berying of thes .iij signes or ani maner signes Therfore ye shall say that sych a lorde berith in latyn in thys Wise as here folowys. ¶ Portat de asuro et tres coronas aureas · non opprimendo loca. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port dasur et trois coronnes dor. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith asure and .iij crownys of golde.

¶ Off fischys borne in armys in dyuse Wyse here is a declaring

Anelh dowbte yit is founde in armys. for as mych as ther Was a certan man that hight Petrus de rupibus in tyme passit the bisshop of Wynchester: the Wich baar in his armys iij Rochys after hys allone naam. in Wich armys it is dowbte. Wether it is enogh to say in the blasyng of them: that he bare sych iij fischys allone. as here in thys scochon. And certanly I thynke nay. for the rule goyng a fore. Bot it is thus to be sayd: of the sayd Petur in latyn. ¶ Portauit tres huiusmodi pisces argenteos natantes in campo nigro. Et gallice sic. ¶ Il port de Sable et trois Roches nãyantz dargent. Et anglice sic. ¶ He berith Sable and iij Rochys flowmyng of Siluer.

¶ And then to thazmys of Galfride lucy as
here nolb apperis i this figure And ye moſt ſay yᵗ
he bare thus in latyn . ¶ Portauit tres lucios
aureos in campo rubeo . Et gallice ſic . ¶ Il
port de goulez et trois lucez dor . Anglice ſic .
¶ He berith goulles and iij lucee of golde .

the Rich certan blaſyng Rith owte declaracion here is enogh .
for the ſayd fiſhes ar in thare proput placis as I ſayd in the
rule afore .

Bot Rhat ſhall be ſayd of thys man then : the
Rich beris .ij. barbellis turnyng theyr backys to
geder as here apperis . Ye moſt ſay in latyn thy
¶ Portat duos barbillos aureos adinuicem i
ga vertentes in ſcuto aſurio puluerizato cū cruci
bus cruciatis figituis de auro . Et gallice ſic .

Il port daſur poudree de croys croselez fichez et deux bar;
bulx dors an dors dor . Et anglice ſic . ¶ He berith aſure
poldrit Rith croſſis croſlettys pyche and .ij. barbellis of golde
backe to backe .

Off azmys the Rich ar calde frectis here nolb I Rylt ſpeke .

A Certan nobull baron that is to ſay the lorde abbeley of
the Reame of Englonde baar in his azmys a frecle .
the Rich certan frectis i mony azmys of dyuerſe gentilt men ar
founde . other Rhile reede other Rhile golde . and other Rhyle
blac oder Rhile ſimple and oder Rhile dobble other Rhile trypult

Digitized by Google

and other while it is multepliet où alt the ſheld
as here it apperith. and ye moſt vndirſtandeon
gret differans by tbiy armys bendit and theis
armys the bich be made with the forſayd frettys
wherfore it is to be markyt that in bendyt armys
the colouris contenyt equally ar dyuydit. Bot i
thes frettis the felde alwai abydys wolt as here. and this for
ſayd lorde audeley berie thus in latyn. ¶ Portat arma frec
tata de auro in campo rubeo. Et gallice ſic. Il port de gold
lez vng frecte dor. Anglice ſic. ¶ He berith gobles and
a frecte of golde.

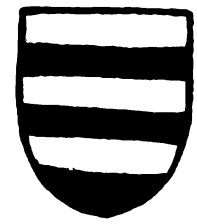
Off armys hauyng beeſtis ſalyentyng or rampyng.

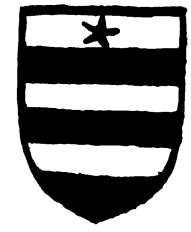
Beeſtis in tharmys of dyuerſe nobull ar borne rampyng
as here i thys figure folowyng apperith. of the bich i the
bolke afore I haue made no mencion. And of
hym that is poſſeſſor of theys armys ye ſhall
ſay i latyn. ¶ Portat de rubio q vnum leo;
nem de argento. Et gallice ſic. ¶ Il port
de gobolez vng Leon ſaliantz dargent. Et an;
glice ſic. ¶ He berith gobles q a lion ram;
pyng of ſiluer. And he is calde a Lion rampyng for thys cau;
ſe. for as mych as the right foote aſcendyth to the right horne
of the ſhelde. and the lefte foote deſcendyth in to the foote of the
ſhelde as apperith i the figure. And this ſame man is obſeruyt
in alt beeſtis hauyng. iiii. feete. that is to ſay in lionys leopar
dis beeris doggis with other like to them.

Digitized by Google

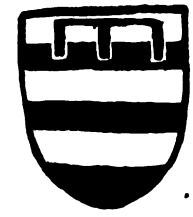
Off armys barrit and of labellis borne in armys.

Firſt note well tharmys of the fadyr as here. and ȳ then the differancis as it ſhall be ſhewyt. for certan ther be dyuſe nobull men ye which bere labellis in theyr armys as it ſhall be ſhewyt in figure after. for the which it is to be knawe that ſych labellis ar not propurli calde signes in armys bot dyfferancis of signes. that when it is ſo: that any nobull man haue many leſull getyn ſonnys: then ye firſt ſon the which is his faderis ayre: ſhall bere the hoolle armys of his fadyr with ſum lyttill differans as here. to whom ſpecialli is geuyn a moon encre; ſyng. for that firſt ſon̄ is in hope of augmentacion and encreſſyng of his patrimony. & thys differans may be ſum littill molet or a cros croſlet or ſych a like differans.





The ſecunde broder ſhall bere the hoolle armys of his fader with .ij. labellis to the differans and in to the ſigne that he is the thride that beris thoſe armys. Alſo the thride broder if ther be any ſhall bere iiij. labellis in tokyn that he is the fauth: that berith thoſe armis of whom the fader is the firſt. the ayre is the ſecunde. and the ſecunde broder is ye thride: that beris thoos armys. And ſo forth; ys that the thride broder ſhall bere. iiij. labellis as here it apperith in thys figure. And ſo forthe iff ther be moo brether ye ſhall encree yother labellys after the forme afore rehersit.



Digitized by Google

¶And the sunnys of thoos same brethez shalt beere the same labelis. ¶And ī case that the secunde brothez the Wich berith iij. labeles haue. ij sonnys. certanly thelder soon of thos. ij. the Wich is nayre to his fadyr shalt bere the hoolt azmys of his fadyr: With also many labelys as his fadyr did. With a litlyt differans as here it appeerith in thys scochon. ¶And hys secunde brodyr shalt bere the hoolt azmys of hys fadyr With the same labellis as his fadyr baare and no moo With a bordure as here in thys figure nept folollyng it shalt be shelbyt. and as it is rehersit in the chapiture of borduris.

¶And iff thez be the thride brodyr then he shalt beere hys faderis azmys With the same labellis and a bordure of an other colollre to the differanf of hys brothyr as it shalt be shelbyt ī thys scochon nept suyng

¶And the chyldyr of thoos men shalt beere theyr dyfferans not in theyr faderis azmys. bot in borduris and dyuysionys dyuse.

¶And like as the chylder of the secunde brodyr bezyng iij. labellis az dyuydyt and dyfferit: by theye signys and theyr borduris. So the chylder of the thride broder bezyng. iiij. labellis: bere the same azmys that theye fader did & also mony labellis. And they az dyfferit by theyr signys and theyr borduris as afore is rehersit: and dyuse othyr. as oder While a Lyon raumpyng oon parte reed an othdr blanke.

Digitized by Google

Now certanly of all the signys the which ar founde i armys as of flowris leuys and other mervellys tokenys I can not declare here : ther be so mony . But ye shall knaw generally that for all tharmys the which lyghtly any man has seen i his days : ye haue rules sufficient as I be leue . to dyscerne and blase any of theym : and it be so that ye be not in yolowe mynde to hasty or to slowfte in the dyscernyng . Ner ye may not ouerryn slowfully the forsayd rules . but dyligently haue theym in yolowe mynde . and be not to fulle of consaitis . For he that will hunt ij haris i oon owre : or oon while on . an other while an other lightly he loses both . Therfore take hede to the rules . Iff so be that they be not a generall doctrine : yet shall thai profecte for thys scienc gretly .

Nedes ye wele theys questionys here nowe solowyng .

But nowe to a question I will procede . and that is thys Whether tharmys of the graunting of a prynce or of other wrdys ar better or of sych dignyte : as armys of a manis propur auctorite take . When that it is leefull to euery nobull man to take to hym armys at his plesure For the which question it is to be knawe that . iiij . maner of wyse we haue armys .

The first maner of wyse we haue owre allone armis the which we bere of owre fadys or of owre moodyr or of owre predycessoris . the which maner of bering is comune and famus in the which I will not stonde long . for that maner is best puyt

¶ The ſecunde maner we haue armys by olde meritys as verey playnly it appeirith by the addicion of tharmys of Fraūce to tharmys of Englonde geyn by that mooſt nobull man prynce Edward the firſt geyn ſone of Kyng Edward the thride y^{t} tyme Kyng of Englond after the takyng of Kyng Johñ of Fraunce i the batell of Poyteirs. The which certan addicion was leſull and rightwyſli doon. and on the ſaame maner of whyſe myght a poore archer haue take a prynce or ſum nobull lorde. ẽ ſo tharmys of that pryſoner: by hym ſo take rightwiſly he may put to hym and to his hayris.

¶ On the thride maner of whiſe whe haue armys the which we beere by the graunteyng of a prynce or of ſum othez lordys.

¶ And ye moſt knaw that thoos armys the which we haue of the graūntyng of a prynce or of a lorde reſayue no queſtion why that he berith thoos ſame. for whi the prynce wyll not: that ſich a queſtion be aſkyt. whi he gaue to any man ſych an armys as it is playn in the lawe of nature and Ciuyll. For that ſame that pleſes thez prynce has the ſtrength of lawe. wt if any mā bare thoos armys afore. for that thyng the which is myne with a rightwys tiyll with olde deſeruyng may not be take fro me. nez the prynce may not do hit rightwyſly.

¶ The faurith maner of whiſe we haue thoos armys the which we take on olde allone ꝑ auctorite. as in theys days opynly we ſe. how many poore men by thayr grace fauoure labour or deſeruyng: ar made nobuls. Sum by theyr prudens. Sū bi thyr māhod. ſū bi thyr ſtrength. ſū bi thyr conig. ſū bi od ūtuys

And of theys men many by theyr alone auctorite haue take armys to be borne to theym and to ther hayres of whom it nedys not here to reherse ye namys. Neu the lees armys that be so takyn they may lefully and frely beer. Bot yit they be not of so grete dignyte and autorite as thos armys the which ar graunted day by day by the autorite of a prynce or of a lorde. Yet armys bi a mannys propur auctorite take: if an other man haue not borne theym afore: be of strength enogh.

¶ And it is the opynyon of moni men that an herowd of armis may gyue armys. Bot I say if any sych armys be borne by any herowd gyuyn that thos armys be of no more auctorite then thos armys the which be take by a mannys alone auctorite.

¶ Explicit.

¶ Here in thys boke afore ar contenyt the bokys of haukyng and huntyng with other plesuris dyuerse as in the boke apperis and also of Cootarmuris a nobull werke. And here nolb endyth the boke of blasyng of armys translatyt and compylyt to gedyr at Seynt albons the yere from thincarnacon of oure lorde Jhū Crist. M. CCCC. lxxx vi.

Digitized by Google

¶ Hic finis diuſoꝝ geneoſis valde vtiliſ vt iuuẽtibꝫ patebit

¶ Sanctus albanus:

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CENTRAL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
University of California, San Diego

DATE DUE

NOV 24 1977	
NOV 08 1977	
OCT 22 1981	
NOV 09 1981	
CI 39	UCSD Libr.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google